

The Russian Primary Chronicle

LAURENTIAN TEXT

Note. The columns of the diplomatic text of the *Povest'* (ed. E. F. Karsky, in *P.S.R.L.*, I, 2nd ed., [Leningrad, 1926], and referred to in the Introduction as L²) are indicated in parentheses in the translation.

These are the narratives of bygone years regarding the origin of the land of Rus', the first princes of Kiev, and from what source the land of Rus' had its beginning.

Let us accordingly begin this narrative. *After the flood, the sons of Noah (Shem, Ham, and Japheth) divided the earth among them. To the lot of Shem fell the Orient, and his share extended lengthwise as far as India and breadthwise (i.e., from east to south) as far as Rhinocurura, including Persia and Bactria, as well as Syria, Media (which lies beside the Euphrates River), Babylon, Cordyna, Assyria, Mesopotamia, Arabia the Ancient, Elymais, India, Arabia the Mighty, Coelesyria, Commagene, and all Phoenicia.*

To the lot of Ham fell the southern region, comprising Egypt, Ethiopia facing toward India, the other (2) Ethiopia out of which the red Ethiopian river flows to the eastward, the Thebaid, Libya as far as Cyrene, Marmaris, Syrtis, and other Libya, Numidia, Massyris, and Maurentania over against Cadiz. Among the regions of the Orient, Ham also received Cilicia, Pamphylia, Mysia, Lycaonia, Phrygia, Carmania, Lycia, Caria, Lydia, the rest of Moesia, Troas, Aeolia, Bithynia, and ancient Phrygia. He likewise acquired the islands of Sardinia, Crete, and Cyprus, and the river Gihon, called the Nile.

(3) *To the lot of Japheth fell the northern and the western sections, including Media, Albania, Armenia (both little and great), Cappadocia, Paphlagonia, Galatia, Colchis, Bosporus, Maeotis, Dervis, Sarmatia, Tauria, Scythia, Thrace, Macedonia, Dalmatia, Molossia, Thessaly, Locris, Pellene (which is also called the Peloponnese), Arcadia, Epirus, Illyria, the Slavs, Lychnitis and Adriaca, from which the Adriatic Sea is named. He received also the islands of Britain, Sicily, Euboea, Rhodes, Chios, Lesbos, Cythera, Zacynthus, Cephallenia, Ithaca, and Corcyra, as well as a portion of the land of Asia called Ionia, the*

*river Tigris flowing between the Medes and Babylon,*¹ and the territory to the north extending as far as the Pontus and including the Danube, the Dniester, and the Carpathian Mountains, which are called Hungarian, and thence even to the Dnieper. (4) He likewise acquired dominion over other rivers, among them the Desna, the Pripet', the Dvina, the Volkhov, and the Volga, which flows eastward into the portion of Shem.

In the share of Japheth lies Rus', Chud', and all the gentiles: Merya, Muroma, Ves', Mordva, Chud' beyond the portages, Perm', Pechera, Yam', Ugra, Litva, Zimegola, Kors', Let'gola, and Liv'. The Lyakhs, the Prussians, and Chud' border on the Varangian Sea. The Varangians dwell on the shores of that same sea, and extend to the eastward as far as the portion of Shem. They likewise live to the west beside this sea as far as the land of the English and the French. For the following nations also are a part of the race of Japheth: the Varangians, the Swedes, the Normans, the Gotlanders, the Russes, the English, the Spaniards, the Italians, the Romans, the Germans, the French, the Venetians, the Genoese, and so on. Their homes are situated in the northwest, and adjoin the Hamitic tribes.

(5) Thus Shem, Ham, and Japheth divided the earth among them, and after casting lots, so that none might encroach upon his brother's share, they lived each in his appointed portion. There was but one spoken language, and as mankind multiplied throughout the earth, they planned, in the days of Yoktan and Peleg, to build a tower as high as heaven itself. Thus they gathered together in the plain of Shinar to build the tower and the city of Babylon round about it. But they wrought upon the tower for forty years, and it was unfinished. Then the Lord God descended to look upon the city and the tower, and said, "This race is one, and their tongue is one." So the Lord confused the tongues, and after dividing the people into seventy-two races, he scattered them over the whole world. After the confusion of the tongues, God overthrew the tower with a great wind, and the ruin of it lies between Assur and Babylon. In height and in breadth it is 5400 and 33 cubits, and the ruin was preserved for many years.²

After the destruction of the tower and the division of the nations, the sons of Shem occupied the eastern regions, and sons of Ham those of the south, and the sons of Japheth the western and the northern lands. Among these seventy-two nations, the Slavic race is derived from the line of Japheth, since they are the Noricians, who are identical with the Slavs.

Over a long period the Slavs settled beside the Danube, where the

Hungarian and Bulgarian lands now lie. From among these Slavs, (6) parties scattered throughout the country and were known by appropriate names, according to the places where they settled. Thus some came and settled by the river Morava, and were named Moravians, while others were called Czechs. Among these same Slavs are included the White Croats,³ the Serbs, and the Carinthians. For when the Vlakhs attacked the Danubian Slavs, settled among them, and did them violence, the latter came and made their homes by the Vistula, and were then called Lyakhs.⁴ Of these same Lyakhs some were called Polyanians, some Lutichians, some Mazovians, and still others Pomorians. Certain Slavs settled also on the Dnieper, and were likewise called Polyanians. Still others were named Derevlans, because they lived in the forests. Some also lived between the Pripet' and the Dvina, and were known as Dregovichians. Other tribes resided along the Dvina and were called Polotians on account of a small stream called the Polota, which flows into the Dvina. It was from this same stream that they were named Polotians. The Slavs also dwelt about Lake Il'men', and were known there by their characteristic name. They built a city which they called Novgorod. Still others had their homes along the Desna, the Sem', and the Sula, and were called Severians. Thus the Slavic race was divided, and its language was known as Slavic.

(7) When the Polyanians lived by themselves among the hills, a trade-route connected the Varangians with the Greeks. Starting from Greece, this route proceeds along the Dnieper, above which a portage leads to the Lovat'. By following the Lovat', the great lake Il'men' is reached. The river Volkhov flows out of this lake and enters the great lake Nevo. The mouth of this lake opens into the Varangian Sea. Over this sea goes the route to Rome, and on from Rome overseas to Tsar'grad.⁵ The Pontus, into which flows the river Dnieper, may be reached from that point. The Dnieper itself rises in the upland forest, and flows southward. The Dvina has its source in this same forest, but flows northward and empties into the Varangian Sea. The Volga rises in this same forest but flows to the east, and discharges through seventy mouths into the Caspian Sea. It is possible by this route to the eastward to reach the Bulgars and the Caspians, and thus attain the region of Shem. Along the Dvina runs the route to the Varangians, whence one may reach Rome, and go from there to the race of Ham. But the Dnieper flows through various mouths into the Pontus. This sea, beside which taught St. Andrew, Peter's brother, is called the Russian Sea.⁶

When Andrew was teaching in Sinope and came to (8) Kherson⁷ (as has been recounted elsewhere), he observed that the mouth of the

Dnieper was near by. Conceiving a desire to go to Rome, he thus journeyed to the mouth of the Dnieper. Thence he ascended the river, and by chance he halted beneath the hills upon the shore. Upon arising in the morning, he observed to the disciples who were with him, "See ye these hills? So shall the favor of God shine upon them that on this spot a great city shall arise, and God shall erect many churches therein." He drew near the hills, and having blessed them, he set up a cross. After offering his prayer to God, he descended from the hill on which Kiev was subsequently built, and continued his journey up the Dnieper.

He then reached the Slavs at the point where Novgorod is now situated. He saw these people existing according to their customs, and on observing how they bathed and scrubbed themselves, he wondered at them. He went thence among the Varangians and came to Rome, where he recounted what he had learned and observed. "Wondrous to relate," said he, "I saw the land of the Slavs, and while I was among them, I noticed their wooden bathhouses. They warm them to extreme heat, then undress, and after anointing themselves with an acid liquid, they take young branches and lash their bodies. They actually lash themselves so violently that they barely escape alive. Then they drench themselves with cold water, and thus are revived. They think nothing of doing this (9) every day, and though tormented by none, they actually inflict such voluntary torture upon themselves. Indeed, they make of the act not a mere washing but a veritable torment." When his hearers learned this fact, they marveled. But Andrew, after his stay in Rome, returned to Sinope.

While the Polyanians lived apart and governed their families (for before the time of these brothers there were already Polyanians, and each one lived with his gens on his own lands, ruling over his kinsfolk), there were three brothers, Kiy, Shchek, and Khoriv, and their sister was named Lybed'. Kiy lived upon the hill where the Borichev trail now is, and Shchek dwelt upon the hill now named Shchekovitsa, while on the third resided Khoriv, after whom this hill is named Khorevitsa. They built a town and named it Kiev after their oldest brother. Around the town lay a wood and a great pine-forest in which they used to catch wild beasts. These men were wise and prudent; they were called Polyanians, and there are Polyanians descended from them living in Kiev to this day.

Some ignorant persons have claimed that Kiy was a ferryman, for near Kiev there was (10) at that time a ferry from the other side of the river, in consequence of which people used to say, "To Kiy's ferry." Now if Kiy had been a mere ferryman, he would never have gone to

Tsar'grad. He was then the chief of his kin, and it is related what great honor he received from the Emperor in whose reign he visited the imperial court. On his homeward journey, he arrived at the Danube. The place pleased him and he built a small town, wishing to dwell there with his kinsfolk. But those who lived near by would not grant him this privilege. Yet even now the dwellers by the Danube call this town Kievets. When Kiy returned to Kiev, his native city, he ended his life there; and his brothers Shchek and Khoriv, as well as their sister Lÿbed', died there also.

After the deaths of these three brothers, their gens assumed the supremacy among the Polyanians. The Derevlians possessed a principality of their own, as did also the Dregovichians, while the Slavs had their own authority in Novgorod, and another principality existed on the Polota, where the Polotians dwell. Beyond them reside the Krivichians, who live at the head waters of the Volga, the Dvina, and the Dnieper, and whose city is Smolensk. It is there that the Krivichians dwell, and from them are the Severians sprung. At Beloozero are situated the Ves', and on the lake of Rostov, the Merya, (11) and on Lake Kleshchino the Merya also. Along the river Oka (which flows into the Volga), the Muroma, the Cheremisians, and the Mordva preserve their native languages. For the Slavic race in Rus' includes only the Polyanians, the Derevlians, the people of Novgorod, the Polotians, the Dregovichians, the Severians, and the Buzhians, who live along the river Bug and were later called Volhynians. The following are other tribes which pay tribute to Rus': Chud', Merya, Ves', Muroma, Cheremis', Mordva, Perm', Pechera, Yam,' Litva, Zimegola, Kors', Narva, and Liv'. These tribes have their own languages and belong to the race of Japheth, which inhabits the lands of the north.

Now while the Slavs dwelt along the Danube, as we have said, there came from among the Scythians, that is, from the Khazars, a people called Bulgars who settled on the Danube and oppressed the Slavs. Afterward came the White Ugrians, who inherited the Slavic country. These Ugrians appeared under the Emperor Heraclius, warring on Chosroes, King of Persia. The Avars, who attacked Heraclius the Emperor, nearly capturing him, also lived at this time.⁸ They made war upon the Slavs, (12) and harassed the Dulebians, who were themselves Slavs.⁹ They even did violence to the Dulebian women. When an Avar made a journey, he did not cause either a horse or a steer to be harnessed, but gave command instead that three of four or five women should be yoked to his cart and be made to draw him. Even thus they harassed the Dulebians. The Avars were large of stature and proud of spirit, and God destroyed

them. They all perished, and not one Avar survived. There is to this day a proverb in Rus' which runs, "They perished like the Avars." Neither race nor heir of them remains. The Pechenegs came after them, and the Magyars passed by Kiev later during the time of Oleg.¹⁰

Thus the Polyanians, who belonged to the Slavic race, lived apart, as we have said, and called themselves Polyanians. The Derevliaus, who are likewise Slavs, lived by themselves and adopted this tribal name. But the Radimichians and the Vyatichians sprang from the Lyakhs. There were in fact among the Lyakhs two brothers, one named Radim and other Vyatko. Radim settled on the Sozh', where the people are known as Radimichians, and Vyatko with his family settled on the Oka. The people there were named Vyatichians after him. Thus the Polyanians, the Derevliaus, the Severians, the Radimichians, and the Croats lived at peace. (13) The Dulebians dwelt along the Bug, where the Volhynians now are found, but the Ulichians and the Tivercians lived by the Dniester, and extended as far as the Danube. There was a multitude of them, for they inhabited the banks of the Dniester almost down to the east, and to this day there are cities in that locality which still belong to them. Hence they are called Great Scythia by the Greeks.¹¹

These Slavic tribes preserved their own customs, the law of their forefathers, and their traditions, each observing its own usages. For the Polyanians retained the mild and peaceful customs of their ancestors, and showed respect for their daughters-in-law and their sisters, as well as for their mothers and fathers. For their mothers-in-law and their brothers-in-law they also entertained great reverence. They observed a fixed custom, under which the groom's brother did not fetch the bride, but she was brought to the bridegroom in the evening, and on the next morning her dowry was turned over.

The Derevliaus, on the other hand, existed in bestial fashion, and lived like cattle. They killed one another, ate every impure thing, and there was no marriage among them, but instead they seized upon maidens by capture.¹² The Radimichians, the Vyatichians, and the Severians had the same customs. They lived in the forest like any wild beast, and ate every unclean thing. They spoke obscenely (14) before their fathers and their daughters-in-law. There were no marriages among them, but simply festivals among the villages. When the people gathered together for games, for dancing, and for all other devilish amusements, the men on these occasions carried off wives for themselves, and each took any woman with whom he had arrived at an understanding. In fact, they even had two or three wives apiece. When-

ever a death occurred, a feast was held over the corpse, and then a great pyre was constructed, on which the deceased was laid and burned. After the bones were collected, they were placed in a small urn and set upon a post by the roadside, even as the Vyatichians do to this day. Such customs were observed by the Krivichians and the other pagans, since they did not know the law of God, but made a law unto themselves.¹⁸

Georgius says in his *Chronicle*:

"Among all the nations, there are some that possess a written law, while others simply observe certain fixed customs, for, among those devoid of law, their ancestral usage is accepted in its stead. To this class belong the Seres, who live at the end of the world, and apply as law the customs of their ancestors, which forbid them to commit adultery or incest, to steal, to bear false witness, to kill, or do any wrong whatsoever.

"The law of the Bactrians, called (15) Brahmans or Islanders, which is derived from the forefatherly prescription, prohibits them for reasons of piety from eating meat, drinking wine, committing adultery, or doing any sort of wrong, solely in consequence of religious scruple. But among the Indians, who dwell beside them, are found murderers, criminals and doers of violence beyond all nature. In the most remote portion of their country, they practice cannibalism and kill travelers and, what is worse still, they devour them like dogs.

"The Chaldeans and the Babylonians have a different code, which allows them to marry their mothers, to commit carnal sin with their nieces, and to commit murder. They regard every shameless deed as a virtue when they commit it, even when they are far from their own country.

"The Gelaeans maintain other customs: among them, the women plough, build houses, and perform men's work. But they indulge in vice to the extent of their desire, for they are by no means restrained by their husbands, nor do the latter at all concern themselves about the matter. There are among them bold women who are capable of capturing wild beasts by virtue of their strength. The women have control over their husbands, and rule them.

"In Britain, many men sleep with one woman, (16) and likewise many women have intercourse with one man. The people carry on without jealousy or restraint the vicious customs of their ancestors.

"The Amazons have no husbands, but like brute beasts they are filled with desire once each year in the springtime, and come together with the neighboring men. This season seems to them, as it were, a

time of celebration and great festival. When they give birth to children and a male is born, they kill it, but if the child is of the female sex, then they nurse it and bring it up carefully."¹⁴

Just so, even in our own day, the Polovcians maintain the customs of their ancestors in the shedding of blood and in glorifying themselves for such deeds, as well as in eating every dead or unclean thing, even hamsters and marmots. They marry their mothers-in-law and their sisters-in-law, and observe other usages of their ancestors. But in all countries we Christians who believe in the Holy Trinity, in one baptism, and in one faith, have but one law, as many of us have been baptized into Christ Lord and have put on Christ.

After this time, and subsequent to the death of the three brothers in Kiev, the Polyanians were oppressed by the Derevlans and other neighbors (17) of theirs. Then the Khazars came upon them as they lived in the hills and forests, and demanded tribute from them. After consulting among themselves, the Polyanians paid as tribute one sword per hearth, which the Khazars bore to their prince and their elders, and said to them, "Behold, we have found new tribute." When asked whence it was derived, they replied, "From the forest on the hills by the river Dnieper." The elders inquired what tribute had been paid, whereupon the swords were exhibited. The Khazar elders then protested, "Evil is this tribute, prince. We have won it with a one-edged weapon called a sabre, but the weapon of these men is sharp on both edges and is called a sword. These men shall impose tribute upon us and upon other lands." All this has come to pass, for they spoke thus not of their own will, but by God's commandment. The outcome was the same in the time of Pharaoh, King of Egypt, when Moses was led before him, and the elders of Pharaoh foretold that he should subjugate Egypt. For the Egyptians perished at the hand of Moses, though the Jews were previously their slaves. Just as the Egyptians ruled supreme, but were themselves subsequently ruled over, so it has also come to pass that the Russes rule over the Khazars even to this day.¹⁵

In the year 6360 (852), the fifteenth of the indiction,¹⁶ at the accession of the Emperor Michael, the land of Rus' was first named. We have determined this date from the fact that in the reign of this Emperor Russes attacked Tsar'grad, as is written in the Greek Chronicle.¹⁷ Hence we shall begin at this point (18) and record the dates. Thus from Adam to the Flood, 2242 years elapsed; from the Flood to Abraham, 1082 years; from Abraham to the Mosaic Exodus, 430 years; from the Mosaic Exodus to David, 601 years; from David and the beginning of the reign of Solomon to the captivity of Jerusalem, 448 years; from

the captivity to Alexander, 318 years; from Alexander to the birth of Christ, 333 years; from the birth of Christ to Constantine, 318 years; and from Constantine to Michael, 542 years. Twenty-nine years passed between the first year of Michael's reign and the accession of Oleg, Prince of Rus'. From the accession of Oleg, when he took up his residence in Kiev, to the first year of Igor's principate, thirty-one years elapsed. Thirty-three years passed between Igor's accession and that of Svyatoslav. From the accession of Svyatoslav to that of Yaropolk, twenty-eight years passed. Yaropolk ruled eight years, Vladimir thirty-seven years, and Yaroslav forty years. Thus from the death of Svyatoslav to the death of Yaroslav eighty-five years elapsed, while sixty years separate the death of Yaroslav from that of Svyatopolk. But we shall now return to the subject, recounting what occurred during this period (for we set our beginning at the first year of Michael's reign) and we shall record the dates in order.

6361-6366 (853-858). (19) Michael the Emperor went forth with an army by land and sea against the Bulgarians. The latter, on catching sight of his armament, offered no resistance, and asked leave to be baptized and to submit themselves to the Greeks. The Emperor baptized their prince with all his warriors, and made peace with the Bulgarians.¹⁸

6367 (859). The Varangians from beyond the sea imposed tribute upon the Chuds, the Slavs, the Merians, the Ves', and the Krivichians.¹⁹ But the Khazars imposed it upon the Polyanians, the Severians, and the Vyatichians, and collected a white squirrel-skin from each hearth.

6368-6370 (860-862). The tributaries of the Varangians drove them back beyond the sea and, refusing them further tribute, set out to govern themselves. There was no law among them, but tribe rose against tribe. Discord thus ensued among them, and they began to war one against another. They said to themselves, "Let us seek a prince who may rule over us and judge us according to the Law." They accordingly went overseas to the Varangian Russes: these particular Varangians were known as Russes, just as some are called Swedes, and others Normans, English, and Gotlanders, for they were thus named. The Chuds, the Slavs, (20) the Krivichians, and the Ves' then said to the people of Rus', "Our land is great and rich, but there is no order in it. Come to rule and reign over us." They thus selected three brothers, with their kinsfolk, who took with them all the Russes and migrated. The oldest, Rurik, located himself in Novgorod; the second, Sineus, at Beloozero; and the third, Truvor, in Izborsk.²⁰ On account of these Varangians, the district of Novgorod became known as the land of

Rus'. The present inhabitants of Novgorod are descended from the Varangian race, but aforetime they were Slavs.

After two years, Sineus and his brother Truvor died, and Rurik assumed the sole authority. He assigned cities to his followers, Polotsk to one, Rostov to another, and to another Beloozero. In these cities there are thus Varangian colonists, but the first settlers were, in Novgorod, Slavs; in Polotsk, Krivichians; at Beloozero, Ves', in Rostov, Merians; and in Murom, Muromians. Rurik had dominion over all these districts.

With Rurik there were two men who did not belong to his kin, but were boyars. They obtained permission to go to Tsar'grad with their families. They thus sailed down the Dnieper, and in the course of their journey they saw a small city on a hill. Upon their inquiry as to whose town it was, they were informed that (21) three brothers, Kiy, Shchek, and Khoriv, had once built the city, but that since their deaths, their descendants were living there as tributaries of the Khazars. Askold and Dir remained in the city, and after gathering together many Varangians, they established their dominion over the country of the Polyanians at the same time that Rurik was ruling at Novgorod.

6371-6374 (863-866). Askold and Dir attacked the Greeks during the fourteenth year of the reign of the Emperor Michael.²¹ When the Emperor had set forth against the infidels and had arrived at the Black River, the eparch sent him word that the Russes were approaching Tsar'grad, and the Emperor turned back. Upon arriving inside the strait, the Russes made a great massacre of the Christians, and attacked Tsar'grad in two hundred boats. The Emperor succeeded with difficulty in entering the city. He straightway hastened with the Patriarch Photius to the Church of Our Lady of the Blachernae, where they prayed all night. They also sang hymns and carried the sacred vestment of the Virgin to dip it in the sea. The weather was still, and the sea was calm, but a storm of wind came up, and when great waves straightway rose, confusing the boats of the godless Russes, it threw them upon the shore (22) and broke them up, so that few escaped such destruction and returned to their native land.

6375-6376 (867-868). Basil began his reign.

6377 (869). The entire nation of the Bulgarians accepted baptism.

6378-6387 (870-879). On his deathbed, Rurik bequeathed his realm to Oleg, who belonged to his kin, and entrusted to Oleg's hands his son Igor', for he was very young.²²

6388-6390 (880-882). Oleg set forth, taking with him many warriors from among the Varangians, the Chuds, the Slavs, the Merians and

all the (23) Krivichians. He thus arrived with his Krivichians before Smolensk, captured the city, and set up a garrison there. Thence he went on and captured Lyubech, where he also set up a garrison. He then came to the hills of Kiev, and saw how Askold and Dir reigned there. He hid his warriors in the boats, left some others behind, and went forward himself bearing the child Igor'. He thus came to the foot of the Hungarian hill,²³ and after concealing his troops, he sent messengers to Askold and Dir, representing himself as a stranger on his way to Greece on an errand for Oleg and for Igor', the prince's son, and requesting that they should come forth to greet them as members of their race. Askold and Dir straightway came forth. Then all the soldiery jumped out of the boats, and Oleg said to Askold and Dir, "You are not princes nor even of princely stock, but I am of princely birth." Igor' was then brought forward, and Oleg announced that he was the son of Rurik. They killed Askold and Dir, and after carrying them to the hill, they buried them there, on the hill now known as Hungarian, where the castle of Ol'ma now stands. Over that tomb Ol'ma built a church dedicated to St. Nicholas, but Dir's tomb is behind St. Irene's.²⁴ Oleg set himself up as prince in Kiev, and declared that it should be the mother of Russian cities. The Varangians, Slavs, and others who accompanied him, were called Russes. Oleg began to build stockaded towns, and (24) imposed tribute on the Slavs, the Krivichians, and the Merians. He commanded that Novgorod should pay the Varangians tribute to the amount of 300 *grivny* a year for the preservation of peace.²⁵ This tribute was paid to the Varangians until the death of Yaroslav.

6391 (883). Oleg began military operations against the Derevlans, and after conquering them he imposed upon them the tribute of a black marten-skin apiece.

6392 (884). Oleg attacked the Severians, and conquered them. He imposed a light tribute upon them and forbade their further payment of tribute to the Khazars, on the ground that there was no reason for them to pay it as long as the Khazars were his enemies.

6393 (885). Oleg sent messengers to the Radimichians to inquire to whom they paid tribute. Upon their reply that they paid tribute to the Khazars, he directed them to render it to himself instead, and they accordingly paid him a shilling²⁶ apiece, the same amount that they had paid the Khazars. Thus Oleg established his authority over the Polyanians, the Derevlans, the Severians, and the Radimichians, but he waged war with the Ulichians and the Tivercians.

6394-6395 (886-887). Leo, Basil's son (called Lev by us), became Emperor. He called to the throne his brother Alexander, and they ruled together twenty-six years.²⁷

(25) 6396-6406 (888-898). The Magyars passed by Kiev over the hill now called Hungarian, and on arriving at the Dnieper, they pitched camp.²⁸ They were nomads like the Polovcians. Coming out of the east, they struggled across the great mountains, and began to fight against the neighboring Vlakhs and Slavs. For the Slavs had settled there first, but the Vlakhs had seized the territory of the Slavs. The Magyars subsequently expelled the Vlakhs, took their land, and settled among the Slavs, whom they reduced to submission.²⁹ From that time this territory was called Hungarian. The Magyars made war upon the Greeks, and seized the Thracian and Macedonian territory as far as Salonika. They also attacked the Moravians and the Czechs.

There was at the time but one Slavic race including the Slavs who settled along the Danube and were subjugated by the Magyars, as well as the Moravians, the Czechs, the Lyakhs, and the Polyanians, (26) the last of whom are now called Russes. It was for these Moravians that Slavic books were first written, and this writing prevails also in Rus' and among the Danubian Bulgarians. When the Moravian Slavs and their princes were living in baptism, the Princes Rostislav, Svyatopolk, and Kotsel sent messengers to the Emperor Michael, saying, "Our nation is baptized, and yet we have no teacher to direct and instruct us and interpret the sacred scriptures. We understand neither Greek nor Latin. Some teach us one thing and some another. Furthermore, we do not understand written characters nor their meaning. Therefore send us teachers who can make known to us the words of the scriptures and their sense." The Emperor Michael, upon hearing their request, called together all the scholars, and reported to them the message of the Slavic princes. The scholars suggested that there was a man in Salonika, by name Leo, who had two sons familiar with the Slavic tongue, being learned men as well. When the Emperor was thus informed, he immediately summoned the sons of Leo from Salonika, directing him to send to court forthwith his sons Methodius and Constantine. Upon receipt of this message, Leo quickly sent forth his sons. When they came before the Emperor, he made known to them that the Slavs had communicated to him their desire for teachers who could interpret the holy scriptures to them. The Emperor prevailed (27) upon them to undertake the mission, and sent them into the Slavic country to Rostislav, Svyatopolk, and Kotsel. When they arrived, they undertook to compose a Slavic alphabet, and translated the *Acts* and the

Gospel. The Slavs rejoiced to hear the greatness of God extolled in their native tongue. The apostles afterward translated the Psalter, the *Oktoechos*, and other books.

Now some zealots began to condemn the Slavic books, contending that it was not right for any other nation to have its own alphabet apart from the Hebrews, the Greeks, and the Latins, according to Pilate's superscription, which he composed for the Lord's Cross. When the Pope at Rome heard of this situation, he rebuked those who murmured against the Slavic books, saying, "Let the word of the Scripture be fulfilled that 'all nations shall praise God' (*Ps. lxxi, 17*), and likewise that 'all nations shall declare the majesty of God according as the Holy Spirit shall grant them to speak' (cf. *Acts, ii, 4*). Whosoever condemns the Slavic writing shall be excluded from the Church until he mend his ways. For such men are not sheep but wolves; by their fruits ye shall know them and guard against them. Children of God, hearken unto his teachings, and depart not from the ecclesiastical rule which Methodius your teacher has appointed unto you." Constantine then returned again, and went to instruct the people of Bulgaria; (28) but Methodius remained in Moravia.³⁰

Prince Kotsel appointed Methodius Bishop of Pannonia in the see of St. Andronicus, one of the Seventy, a disciple of the holy Apostle Paul. Methodius chose two priests who were very rapid writers, and translated the whole Scriptures in full from Greek into Slavic in six months between March and the twenty-sixth day of October. After completing the task, he appropriately rendered praise and honor to God, who had bestowed such a blessing upon Bishop Methodius, the successor of Andronicus. Now Andronicus is the apostle of the Slavic race. He traveled among the Moravians, and the Apostle Paul taught there likewise. For in that region is Illyricum, whither Paul first repaired and where the Slavs originally lived. Since Paul is the teacher of the Slavic race, from which we Russians too are sprung, even so the Apostle Paul is the teacher of us Russians, for he preached to the Slavic nation, and appointed Andronicus as Bishop and successor to himself among them. But the Slavs and the Russes are one people, for it is because of the Varangians that the latter became known as Rus', though originally they were Slavs. While some Slavs were termed Polyanians, their speech was still Slavic, for they were known as Polyanians (29) because they lived in the fields. But they had the same Slavic language.

6407-6410 (899-902). The Emperor Leo incited the Magyars against the Bulgarians, so that they attacked and subjugated the whole Bulgarian country. When Symeon heard this news, he turned upon the

Magyars who attacked him and conquered the Bulgarians so that Symeon took refuge in Silistria.³¹

6411 (903). As Igor' grew up, he followed after Oleg, and obeyed his instructions. A wife, Olga by name, was brought to him from Pskov.³²

6412-6415 (904-907). Leaving Igor' in Kiev, Oleg attacked the Greeks.³³ He took with him a multitude of Varangians, Slavs, Chuds, Krivichians, Merians, Polyanians, Severians, Derevlians, Radimichians, Croats, Dulebians, and Tivercians, who are pagans. All these tribes are known as Great Scythia by the Greeks. With this entire force, Oleg sallied forth by horse and by ship, and the number of his vessels was two thousand. (30) He arrived before Tsar'grad, but the Greeks fortified the strait and closed up the city. Oleg disembarked upon the shore, and ordered his soldiery to beach the ships. They waged war around the city, and accomplished much slaughter of the Greeks. They also destroyed many palaces and burned the churches. Of the prisoners they captured, some they beheaded, some they tortured, some they shot, and still others they cast into the sea. The Russes inflicted many other woes upon the Greeks after the usual manner of soldiers. Oleg commanded his warriors to make wheels which they attached to the ships, and when the wind was favorable, they spread the sails and bore down upon the city from the open country. When the Greeks beheld this, they were afraid, and sending messengers to Oleg, they implored him not to destroy the city and offered to submit to such tribute as he should desire. Thus Oleg halted his troops. The Greeks then brought out to him food and wine, but he would not accept it, for it was mixed with poison. Then the Greeks were terrified, and exclaimed, "This is not Oleg, but St. Demetrius, whom God has sent upon us." So Oleg demanded that they pay tribute for his two thousand ships at the rate of twelve *grivnĭ* per man, with forty men reckoned to a ship.

The Greeks assented to these terms and prayed for peace lest Oleg should conquer the land of Greece. Retiring thus a short distance from the city, Oleg concluded a peace with the Greek Emperors Leo and Alexander, and sent into the city to them (31) Karl, Farulf, Vermund, Hrollaf, and Steinvith, with instructions to receive the tribute. The Greeks promised to satisfy their requirements. Oleg demanded that they should give to the troops on the two thousand ships twelve *grivnĭ* per bench, and pay in addition the sums required for the various Russian cities: first Kiev, then Chernigov, Pereyasavl', Polotsk, Rostov, Lyubech, and the other towns. In these cities lived great princes subject to Oleg.

[*The Russes proposed the following terms:*] "The Russes who come

hither shall receive as much grain as they require. Whosoever come as merchants shall receive supplies for six months, including bread, wine, meat, fish, and fruit. Baths shall be prepared for them in any volume they require. When the Russes return homeward, they shall receive from your Emperor food, anchors, cordage, and sails and whatever else is needed for the journey."

The Greeks accepted these stipulations, and the Emperors and all the courtiers declared:

"If Russes come hither without merchandise, they shall receive no provisions. Your prince shall personally lay injunction upon such Russes as journey hither that they shall do no violence in the towns and throughout our territory. Such Russes as arrive here shall dwell in the St. Mamas quarter.⁸⁴ Our government will send officers to record their names, and they shall then receive their monthly allowance, first the natives of Kiev, then those from Chernigov, Pereyaslavl', and the other cities. They shall not enter the city save through one gate, unarmed and fifty at a time, escorted by an agent of the Emperor. They may conduct business according to their requirements without payment of taxes."

(32) Thus the Emperors Leo and Alexander made peace with Oleg, and after agreeing upon the tribute and mutually binding themselves by oath, they kissed the cross, and invited Oleg and his men to swear an oath likewise. According to the religion of the Russes, the latter swore by their weapons and by their god Perun, as well as by Volos, the god of cattle, and thus confirmed the treaty.³⁵

Oleg gave orders that sails of brocade should be made for the Russes and silken ones for the Slavs, and his demand was satisfied.³⁶ The Russes hung their shields upon the gates as a sign of victory, and Oleg then departed from Tsar'grad. The Russes unfurled their sails of brocade and the Slavs their sails of silk, but the wind tore them. Then the Slavs said, "Let us keep our canvas ones; silken sails are not made for the Slavs." So Oleg came to Kiev, bearing palls, gold, fruit, and wine, along with every sort of adornment. The people called Oleg "the Sage," for they were but pagans, and therefore ignorant.

6416-6419 (908-911). A great star appeared in the west in the form of a spear.³⁷

6420 (912). Oleg despatched his vassals to make peace and to draw up a treaty between the Greeks and the Russes. His envoys thus made declaration:

"This is the copy of the treaty concluded under the Emperors Leo and Alexander. We of the (33) Rus' nation: Karl, Ingjald, Farulf, Vermund, Hrollaf, Gunnar, Harold, Karni, Frithleif, Hroarr, Angan-

tyr, Throand, Leithulf, Fast, and Steinvith,³⁸ are sent by Oleg, Great Prince of Rus', and by all the serene and great princes and the great boyars under his sway, unto you, Leo and Alexander and Constantine, great Autocrats in God, Emperors of the Greeks, for the maintenance and proclamation of the long-standing amity which joins Greeks and Russes, in accordance with the desires of our Great Princes and at their command, and in behalf of all those Russes who are subject to the hand of our Prince.

"Our serenity, above all desirous, through God's help, of maintaining and proclaiming such amicable relations as now exist between Christians and Russians, has often deemed it proper to publish and confirm this amity not merely in words but also in writing and under a firm oath sworn upon our weapons according to our religion and our law. As we previously agreed in the name of God's peace and amity, the articles of this convention are as follows:

"First, that we shall conclude a peace with you Greeks, and love each other with all our heart and will, and as far as lies in our power, prevent any subject of our serene Princes from committing any crime or misdemeanor. Rather shall we exert ourselves as far as possible to maintain as irrevocable and immutable henceforth and forever the amity thus proclaimed by our agreement with you Greeks and ratified by signature and oath. May you Greeks on your part maintain as irrevocable and (34) immutable henceforth and forever this same amity toward our serene Prince of Rus' and toward all the subjects of our serene Prince.

"In the matter of stipulations concerning damage, we subscribe to the following provisions:

"If clear proofs of tort exist, there shall be a true declaration of such proofs. But if this declaration is contested, the dissenting party shall take oath to this effect, and after he shall have taken oath according to his faith, a penalty shall be assessed in proportion to the apparent trespass committed.

"Whatsoever Russ kills a Christian, or whatsoever Christian kills a Russ, shall die, since he has committed murder. If any man flee after committing a murder, in the case that he is well-to-do, the nearest relatives of the victim shall receive a legal portion of the culprit's property, while the wife of the murderer shall receive a like amount, which is legally due her. But if the defendant is poor and has escaped, he shall be under distress until he returns, when he shall be executed.

"If any man strike another with a sword or assault him with any other sort of weapon, he shall, according to Russian law, pay five pounds

of silver for such blow or assault. If the defendant is poor, he shall pay as much as he is able, and be deprived even of the very clothes he wears, and he shall also declare upon oath that he has no one to aid him. Thereafter the case against him shall be discontinued.

"If any Russ commit a theft against a Christian, (35) or *vice versa*, and should the transgressor be caught in the act by the victim of the loss, and be killed while resisting arrest, no penalty shall be exacted for his death by either Greeks or Russes. The victim of the loss shall recover the stolen property. If the thief surrenders, he shall be taken and bound by the one upon whom the theft was committed, and the culprit shall return whatever he has dared to appropriate, making at the same time threefold restitution for it.

"If any person, whether Greek or Russ, employs abusive treatment or violence against another and appropriates by force some articles of his property, he shall repay three times its value.

"If a ship is detained by high winds upon a foreign shore, and one of us Russes is near by, the ship with its cargo shall be revictualled and sent on to Christian territory. We will pilot it through every dangerous passage until it arrives at a place of safety. But if any such ship thus detained by storm or by some terrestrial obstacle cannot possibly reach its destination, we Russes will extend aid to the crew of this ship, and conduct them with their merchandise in all security, in case such an event takes place near Greek territory. But if such an accident befalls near the Russian shore, the ship's cargo shall be disposed of, and we Russes will remove whatever can be disposed of for the account of the owners. Then, when we proceed to Greece with merchandise or upon an embassy to your Emperor, we shall render up honorably the price of the sold (36) cargo of the ship. But if anyone on that ship is killed or maltreated by us Russes, or if any object is stolen, then those who have committed such acts shall be subject to the previously provided penalty.

"From this time forth, if a prisoner of either nation is in durance either of the Russes or of the Greeks, and then sold into another country, any Russ or Greek who happens to be in that locality shall purchase the prisoner and return the person thus purchased to his own native country. The purchaser shall be indemnified for the amount thus expended, or else the value of the prisoner's daily labor shall be reckoned toward the purchase money. If any Russ be taken prisoner by the Greeks, he shall likewise be sent back to his native land, and his purchase price shall be repaid, as has been stipulated, according to his value.

"Whenever you find it necessary to declare war, or when you are conducting a campaign, providing any Russes desirous of honoring your Emperor come at any time and wish to remain in his service, they shall be permitted in this respect to act according to their desire.

"If a Russian prisoner from any region is sold among the Christians, or if any Christian prisoner is sold among the Russes, he shall be ransomed for twenty bezants and returned to his native land.

"In case a Russian slave is stolen or escapes or is sold under compulsion, and if a Russ institutes a claim to this effect which is substantiated, the slave shall be returned to Rus'. If a merchant loses a slave and institutes a complaint, he shall search for this slave until he is found, but if any person refuses to allow him to make this search, the local officer shall forfeit his right of perquisition.

"With respect to the Russes professionally engaged in Greece under the orders of (37) the Christian Emperor, if any one of them dies without setting his property in order and has no kinsfolk there, his estate shall be returned to his distant relatives in Rus'. But if he makes some disposition of his goods, the person whom he has designated in writing as his heir shall receive the property of which he thus disposed. Such shall be the due process of inheritance in the cases of Russes engaging in trade, of casual travelers in Greece, and of those having debts outstanding there.

"If a criminal takes refuge in Greece, the Russes shall make complaint to the Christian Empire, and such criminal shall be arrested and returned to Rus' regardless of his protests. The Russes shall perform the same service for the Greeks whenever the occasion arises.

"As a convention and an inviolable pledge binding equally upon you Greeks and upon us Russes, we have caused the present treaty to be transcribed in vermillion script upon parchment in duplicate. In the name of the Holy Cross and the Holy and Indivisible Trinity of your one true God, your Emperor has confirmed it by his signature and handed it to our envoys. According to our own faith and the custom of our nation, we have sworn to your Emperor, who rules over you by the grace of God, that we will neither violate ourselves, nor allow any of our subjects to violate the peace and amity assured by the articles thus concluded between us. We have transmitted this document for the ratification of your Majesty in order to confirm and promulgate the treaty thus concluded between us this second of September, in the year of Creation 6420 (911), fifteenth of the indiction."³⁹

The Emperor Leo honored the Russian envoys with gifts (38) of gold, palls, and robes, and placed his vassals at their disposition to show

them the beauties of the churches, the golden palace, and the riches contained therein. They thus showed the Russes much gold and many palls and jewels, together with the relics of our Lord's Passion: the crown, the nails, and the purple robe, as well as the bones of the Saints. They also instructed the Russes in their faith, and expounded to them the true belief. Thus the Emperor dismissed them to their native land with great honor. The envoys sent by Oleg returned to Kiev, and reported to him all the utterances of both Emperors. They recounted how they had made peace and established a covenant between Greece and Rus', confirmed by oaths inviolable for the subjects of both countries.

Thus Oleg ruled in Kiev, and dwelt at peace with all nations.

Now autumn came, and Oleg bethought him of his horse that he had caused to be well fed, yet had never mounted. For on one occasion he had made inquiry of the wonder-working magicians as to the ultimate cause of his death. One magician replied, "Oh Prince, it is from the steed which you love and on which you ride that you shall meet your death." Oleg then reflected and determined never to mount this horse or even to look upon it again. So he gave command that the horse should be properly fed, but never led into his presence. He thus let several years pass until he had attacked the Greeks. After he returned to Kiev, four years elapsed, but in the fifth he thought of the horse through which the magicians had foretold that he should meet his death. He thus summoned his senior squire and inquired as to the whereabouts of the horse which he had ordered to be fed and well cared for. (39) The squire answered that he was dead. Oleg laughed and mocked the magician, exclaiming, "Soothsayers tell untruths, and their words are naught but falsehood. This horse is dead, but I am still alive."

Then he commanded that a horse should be saddled. "Let me see his bones," said he. He rode to the place where the bare bones and skull lay. Dismounting from his horse, he laughed and remarked, "So I was supposed to receive my death from this skull?" And he stamped upon the skull with his foot. But a serpent crawled forth from it and bit him in the foot, so that in consequence he sickened and died. All the people mourned for him in great grief. They bore him away and buried him upon the hill which is called Shchekovitsa. His tomb stands there to this day, and it is called the Tomb of Oleg.⁴⁰ Now all the years of his reign were thirty-three.

It is remarkable what may be accomplished through witchcraft and enchantment. During the reign of Domitian, there lived a certain

soothsayer named Apollonius of Tyana. He attained celebrity, and journeyed about performing infernal marvels throughout the cities and towns. From Rome he came to Byzantium, and on being besought of the inhabitants to accomplish this wonder, he drove out a multitude of serpents and scorpions from the city, so that no man should be wounded by them. He also tamed horses of violent temper before the assembled nobles.

He came likewise to Antioch, and on being besought by the inhabitants (since Antioch was tormented with scorpions (40) and gnats), he made a brass scorpion and buried it in the earth. After setting a small marble post over it, he bade the inhabitants hold reeds in their hands and walk through the city shaking the reeds and crying, "May this city be rid of gnats!" Thus the gnats and scorpions vanished from the city. When he was questioned regarding the earthquakes that threatened the city, he sighed, and wrote on a tablet these words, "Alas for thee, unhappy city! Thou shalt be much shaken by an earthquake and fall a prey to flame, and this river Orontes shall bewail thee by its shores."

Of this magician, the great Anastasius of the City of God remarked, "Even to this day the enchantments of Apollonius remain effective, some for the elimination of four-footed beasts or of birds capable of harming mankind, and others for the control of beds of rivers flowing in unfixed channels, while still others are eminently effective against disease and injury to man." Not only during his life did the demons at his command bring such wonders to pass, but even after his death they hover about his tomb and perform miracles in his name to deceive unhappy men, who are much inclined to such errors through the influence of the devil.

What shall we say of those who perform works of magic? For a certain man was so skilled in magical deception that he ridiculed Apollonius the Sage on the ground that he did not cultivate true (41) philosophical knowledge. "He ought," he asserted, "like me to accomplish his desires by means of a single word, and should not execute his devices by material means." All these things exist through the sufferance of God and the agency of the devil, that by such means our orthodox faith may be tested as to whether it is firm and secure, cleaving to the Lord and not to be seduced by the Enemy through false miracles and satanic acts performed by the servants and slaves of his wickedness. Some have even prophesied in the name of the Lord, like Balaam and Saul and Caiaphas, and have driven out the devil like Jude and the sons of Sceva (Acts, xix, 14-15). For the Lord often gives grace to the

unworthy that it may benefit others. Thus Balaam was far from both life and faith, yet in him the Lord gave evidence of grace that others might see. Such was Pharaoh, but to him the Lord showed the future. There was Nebuchadnezzar also, who sinned against the law. To him the Lord revealed what was to occur after many generations, thus showing that many who have a hostile heart perform miracles according to the example of Christ, yet by other means, to deceive men who do not understand good works. Such were Simon the Magician and (42) Menander. Of such men it has truly been said, "Be not deceived by miracles."⁴¹

6421 (913). Igor' succeeded Oleg and began his reign. At the same time began the reign of Constantine, son of Leo and son-in-law of Romanus.⁴² The Derevlans offered resistance to Igor' after Oleg's death.

6422 (914) Igor' attacked the Derevlans, and after conquering them, he imposed upon them a tribute larger than Oleg's. In the same year, Symeon of Bulgaria attacked Tsar'grad, and when peace was made, he returned to his own country.

6423 (915). The Pechenegs entered the land of Rus' for the first time, but when they made peace with Igor', they went their way to the Danube. At this time, Symeon subjugated Thrace, and the Greeks summoned the Pechenegs to aid them. When the Pechenegs arrived and wished to attack Symeon, the Greek generals quarreled. The Pechenegs, on seeing how they were quarreling among themselves, returned homeward, but the Bulgarians came to blows with the Greeks, and the Greeks were cut to pieces. Symeon took Adrianople,⁴³ which was first called the city of Orestes, son of Agamemnon, who in ancient times was cured of a disease by bathing in three rivers, and then named the city after himself on this account. Subsequently the Emperor Hadrian restored (43) it, and named it Adrianople for himself, but we call it Adriangrad.

6424-6428 (916-920). Romanus was set up as Emperor in Greece.⁴⁴ Igor' waged war against the Pechenegs.

6429-6437 (921-929). Symeon attacked Tsar'grad, ravaged Thrace and Macedonia, and presumptuously appeared with a large force before Tsar'grad. He then made peace with the Emperor Romanus, and returned into his own country.⁴⁵

6438-6442 (930-934). The Magyars attacked Tsar'grad for the first time, and ravaged the whole of Thrace. Romanus made peace with them.⁴⁶

(44) 6443-6449 (935-941). Igor' attacked the Greeks, and the Bul-

garians sent word to the Emperor that the Russes were advancing upon Tsar'grad with ten thousand vessels.⁴⁷ The Russes set out across the sea, and began to ravage Bithynia. They waged war along the Pontus as far as Heraclea and Paphlagonia, and laid waste the entire region of Nicomedia, burning everything along the gulf. Of the people they captured, some they butchered, others they set up as targets and shot at, some they seized upon, and after binding their hands behind their backs, they drove iron nails through their heads. Many sacred churches they gave to the flames, while they burned many monasteries and villages, and took no little booty on both sides of the sea. Then, when the army came out of the east, Pantherius the Domestic with forty thousand men, Phocas the Patrician with the Macedonians, and Theodore the General with the Thracians, supported by other illustrious nobles, surrounded the Russes. After taking counsel, the latter threw themselves upon the Greeks, and as the conflict between them was desperate, the Greeks experienced difficulty in winning the upper hand. The Russes returned at evening to their companions, embarked at night upon their vessels, and fled away. Theophanes pursued them in boats with Greek fire, and dropped it through pipes upon the Russian ships, so that a strange miracle was offered to view.

Upon seeing the flames, the Russians cast themselves into the seawater, being anxious to escape, (45), but the survivors returned home. When they came once more to their native land, where each one recounted to his kinsfolk the course of events and described the fire launched from the ships, they related that the Greeks had in their possession the lightning from heaven, and had set them on fire by pouring it forth, so that the Russes could not conquer them. Upon his return, Igor' began to collect a great army, and sent many messengers after the Varangians beyond the sea, inviting them to attack the Greeks, for he desired to make war upon them.

6450 (942). Symeon attacked the Croats and was beaten by them. He then died, leaving Peter, his son, as Prince of the Bulgarians.⁴⁸

6451 (943). When the Magyars had attacked Tsar'grad, they returned homeward after they had made peace with Romanus.⁴⁹

6452 (944). After collecting many warriors among the Varangians, the Russes, the Polyanians, the Slavs, the Krivichians, the Tivercians, and the Pechenegs, and receiving hostages from them, Igor' advanced upon the Greeks by ship and by horse, thirsting for revenge.⁵⁰ The Khersonians, upon hearing of this expedition, reported to Romanus that the Russes were advancing with innumerable ships and covered

the sea with their vessels. Likewise the Bulgarians sent tidings to the effect that the Russes were on the way, and that they had won the Pechenegs for their allies. When the Emperor heard this news, he sent to Igor' his best boyars to entreat him to come no nearer, but rather to accept the tribute which Oleg had received, and to the amount of which something should even be added. He likewise sent palls and much gold to the Pechenegs.

Now Igor', when he came to the Danube, called together his retinue, and after some reflection communicated to them the Emperor's offer. (46) Igor's retinue then replied, "If the Emperor speaks thus, what do we desire beyond receiving gold, silver, and palls without having to fight for them? Who knows who will be victorious, we or he? Who has the sea for his ally? For we are not marching by land, but through the depths of the sea. Death lies in wait for us all." Igor' heeded them, and bade the Pechenegs ravage Bulgaria. He himself, after receiving from the Greeks gold and palls sufficient for his whole army, returned again and came to Kiev in his native land.

6453 (945). Romanus, Constantine, and Stephen sent envoys to Igor' to renew the previous treaty, and Igor' discussed the matter with them. Igor' sent his own envoys to Romanus, and the Emperor called together his boyars and his dignitaries. The Russian envoys were introduced and bidden to speak, and it was commanded that the remarks of both parties should be inscribed upon parchment. A copy of the agreement concluded under the most Christian princes Romanus, Constantine, and Stephen follows:

"We are the envoys from the Russian nation: Ivar, envoy of Igor', Great Prince of Rus', and the general envoys as follows: Vefast representing Svyatoslav, son of Igor'; Isgaut for the Princess Olga; Slothi for Igor', nephew of Igor'; Oleif for Vladislav; Kanitzar for Predslava; Sigbjorn for Svanhild, wife of Oleif; Freystein for Thorth; Leif for Arfast; Grim for Sverki; Freystein for Haakon, nephew of Igor'; Kari for Stoething; Karlsefni for Thorth; Hegri for Efling; Voist for Voik; Eistr for Amund; (47) Freystein for Bjorn; Yatving for Gunnar; Sigfrid for Halfdan; Kill for Klakki; Steggi for Jotun; Sverki; Hallvarth for Guthi; Frothi for Throand; Munthor for Ut; the merchants Authun, Authulf, Ingivald, Oleif, Frutan, Gamal, Kussi, Heming, Thorfrid, Thorstein, Bruni, Hroald, Gunnfast, Freystein, Ingjald, Thorbjorn, Manni, Hroald, Svein, Styr, Halfdan, Tirr, Askbrand, Visleif, Sveinki Borich: sent by Igor', Great Prince of Rus', and from each prince and all the people of the land of Rus', by whom is

ordained the renewal of the former peace to the confusion of the devil, who hates peace and loves discord, and to the establishment of concord between Greeks and Russes for many years to come.⁵¹

"Our Great Prince Igor', and his princes and his boyars, and the whole people of Rus have sent us to Romanus, Constantine, and Stephen the mighty Emperors of Greece, to establish a bond of friendship with the Emperors themselves, as well as with all their boyars and the entire Greek nation henceforth and forever, as long as the sun shines and the world stands fixed. If any inhabitant of the land of Rus' thinks to violate this amity, may such of these transgressors as have adopted the Christian faith incur condign punishment from Almighty God in the shape of damnation and destruction forevermore. If any of these transgressors be not baptized, may they receive help neither from God nor from Perun: (48) may they not be protected by their own shields, but may they rather be slain by their own swords, laid low by their own arrows or by any of their own weapons, and may they be in bondage forever."

[*The Greeks stipulated:*] "The Great Prince of Rus' and his boyars shall send to Greece to the great Greek Emperors as many ships as they desire with their agents and merchants, according to the prevailing usage. The agents hitherto carried gold seals, and the merchants silver ones. But your Prince has now made known that he will forward a certificate to our government, and any agents or merchants thus sent by the Russians shall be provided with such a certificate to the effect that a given number of ships has been dispatched. By this means we shall be assured that they come with peaceful intent.

"But if such persons come uncertified and are surrendered to us, we shall detain and hold them until we notify your Prince. If they do not surrender, but offer resistance, they shall be killed, and indemnity for their death shall not be exacted by your Prince. If, however, they flee to Rus', we shall so inform your Prince, and he shall deal with them as he sees fit.

"If Russes come without merchandise, they shall not be entitled to receive monthly allowance. Your Prince shall moreover prohibit his agents and such other Russes as come hither from the commission of violence in our villages and territory. Such Russes as come hither shall dwell by St. Mamas's Church. Our authorities shall note their names, and they shall then receive their monthly allowance, (49) the agents the amount proper to their position, and the merchants the usual amount; first, those from Kiev, then those from Chernigov and Pereyaslav'. They shall enter the city through one gate in groups of

fifty without weapons, and shall dispose of their merchandise as they require, after which they shall depart. An officer of our government shall guard them, in order that, if any Russ or Greek does wrong, he may redress it.

“When the Russes enter the city, they shall not have the right to buy silk above the value of fifty bezants. Whoever purchases such silks shall exhibit them to the imperial officer, who will stamp and return them. When the Russes depart hence, they shall receive from us as many provisions as they require for the journey, and what they need for their ships (as has been previously determined), and they shall return home in safety. They shall not have the privilege of wintering in the St. Mamas quarter.

“If any slave runs away from the Russes and while they are within the territory of our Empire, or from the St. Mamas quarter, he shall be apprehended if found in Greek territory. If he is not found, the Christian Russes shall so swear according to their faith, and the non-Christians after their custom, and they shall then receive from us their due, two pieces of silk per slave, according to previous stipulations. If, among the people of our Empire, whether from our city or elsewhere, any slave of ours escapes (50) among you and takes anything with him, the Russes shall send him back again. If what he has appropriated is intact, the finders shall receive two bezants from its value.

“If any Russ attempts to commit theft upon the subjects of our Empire, he who so acts shall be severely punished, and he shall pay double the value of what he has stolen. If a Greek so transgress against a Russ, he shall receive the same punishment that the latter would suffer for a like offence. If a Russ commits a theft upon a Greek, or a Greek upon a Russ, he must return not only the stolen article, but also its value. If the stolen article is found to have been sold, he shall return double the price, and also shall be punished both by Greek law and statute and by the law of the Russes.

“If the Russes bring in young men or grown girls who have been taken prisoners from our dominions, the Greeks shall pay a ransom of ten bezants each and recover the captives. If the latter are of middle age, the Greeks shall recover them on payment of eight bezants each. But in the case that the captives are old persons or young children, the ransom shall be five bezants. If any Russes are found laboring as slaves in Greece, providing they are prisoners of war, the Russes shall ransom them for ten bezants each. But if a Greek has actually purchased any such prisoner, and so declares under oath, he shall receive in return the full purchase price paid for the prisoner.

"In the matter of the country of Kherson and all the cities in that region, the Prince of Rus' shall not have the right (51) to harass these localities, nor shall that district be subject to you. If the Prince of Rus' calls on us for soldiers wherewith to wage war, we agree to supply him with any number required.

"In case the Russes find a Greek ship cast ashore, they shall not harm it, and if any person remove any object therefrom or enslave a member of the crew, or kill him, he shall be amenable to both Russian and Greek law. If Russian subjects meet with Khersonian fishermen at the mouth of Dnieper, they shall not harm them in any wise. The Russes shall, moreover, not have the right to winter at the mouth of Dnieper, either at Belobereg or by St. Eleutherius, but when autumn comes, they shall return home to Rus'. Regarding the Black Bulgarians, who come and ravage the Kherson district, we enjoin the Prince of Rus' not to allow them to injure that region.

"If any crime is committed by a Greek subject to our Empire, the Russes shall not have the right to punish him, but according to the legislation of our Empire, he shall suffer in proportion to his misdeed.

"If a Christian kill a Russ, or a Russ a Christian, he who has committed the murder shall be held by the relatives of the deceased that they may kill him. If he who has committed murder runs away and escapes, the relatives of the murdered man shall receive the murderer's property in the case that he is wealthy. But if the escaped culprit is poor, he shall be pursued (52) till found, and when he is found, he shall be executed.

"If a Russ assault a Greek, or a Greek a Russ, with sword, spear, or any other weapon, he who has committed this crime shall pay five pounds of silver according to the Russian law, but if he is poor, all his available property shall be sold, even to the garments he walks in, and these too shall be taken from him. Finally he shall swear upon his faith that he has no possessions, and then he shall be released.

"If our government shall desire of you military assistance for use against our adversaries, they shall communicate with your Great Prince, and he shall send us as many soldiers as we require. From this fact, other countries shall learn what amity the Greeks and the Russes entertain toward each other.⁵²

"By common consent, we have thus inscribed all this convention upon a double parchment, one portion of which remains in the hands of our government, with a cross and our names subscribed thereon, while your merchants and agents have signed the other. Your representatives shall go forth with the envoys of our government and con-

duct them before Igor', Great Prince of Rus', and to his subjects. Upon receipt of this document, they shall then bind themselves by oath to observe the truth as agreed upon between us and inscribed upon this parchment, wherein our names are written."

[*The Russes thus bound themselves:*] "Those of us who are baptized have sworn in the Cathedral, by the church of St. Elias, upon the Holy Cross set before us, and upon this parchment, to abide by all that is written herein, and not to violate (53) any of its stipulations. May whosoever of our compatriots, Prince or common, baptized or unbaptized, who does so violate them, have no succor from God, but may he be slave in this life and in the life to come, and may he perish by his own arms.

"The unbaptized Russes shall lay down their shields, their naked swords, their armlets, and their other weapons, and shall swear to all that is inscribed upon this parchment, to be faithfully observed forever by Igor', all his boyars, and all the people from the land of Rus'. If any of the princes or any Russian subject, whether Christian or non-Christian, violates the terms of this instrument, he shall merit death by his own weapons, and be accursed of God and of Perun because he violated his oath. So be it good that the Great Prince Igor' shall rightly maintain these friendly relations that they may never be interrupted, as long as the sun shines and the world endures henceforth and forevermore."

The agents sent by Igor' returned to him with the Greek envoys, and reported all the words of the Emperor Romanus. Then Igor' called the Greek envoys before him, and bade them report what injunction the Emperor had laid upon them. The Emperor's envoys replied, "The Emperor has sent us. He loves peace, and desires to maintain concord and amity with the Prince of Rus'. Your envoys have received the pledge of our Emperors, and they have sent us to receive your oath and that of your followers." Igor' promised to comply with their request.

(54) In the morning, Igor' summoned the envoys, and went to a hill on which there was a statue of Perun. The Russes laid down their weapons, their shields, and their gold ornaments, and Igor' and his people took oath (at least, such as were pagans), while the Christian Russes took oath in the church of St. Elias, which is above the creek, in the vicinity of the Pasyncha square and the quarter of the Khazars. This was, in fact, a parish church, since many of the Varangians were Christians.⁵⁸

Igor', after confirming the treaty with the Greeks, dismissed their envoys, bestowing upon them furs, slaves, and wax, and sent them

away. The envoys then returned to the Emperor, and reported all the words of Igor' and his affection for the Greeks. Thus Igor' began to rule in Kiev, enjoying peaceful relations with all nations. But when autumn came, he thought of the Derevlans, and wished to collect from them a still larger tribute.⁵⁴

6453 (945). In this year, Igor's retinue said to him, "The servants of Sveinald are adorned with weapons and fine raiment, but we are naked. Go forth with us, oh Prince, after tribute, that both you and we may profit thereby." Igor' heeded their words, and he attacked Dereva in search of tribute. He sought to increase the previous tribute and collected it by violence from the people with the assistance of his followers. After thus gathering the tribute, he returned to his city. On his homeward way, he said to his followers, after some reflection, "Go forward with the tribute. I shall turn back, and rejoin you later." He dismissed his retainers on their journey homeward, but being desirous of still greater booty he returned on his tracks with a few of his followers.

The Derevlans heard that he was again approaching, and consulted with Mal, their prince, saying, (55) "If a wolf come among the sheep, he will take away the whole flock one by one, unless he be killed. If we do not thus kill him now, he will destroy us all." They then sent forward to Igor' inquiring why he had returned, since he had collected all the tribute. But Igor' did not heed them, and the Derevlans came forth from the city of Iskorosten' and slew Igor' and his company, for the number of the latter was few. So Igor' was buried, and his tomb is near the city of Iskorosten' in Dereva even to this day.

But Olga was in Kiev with her son, the boy Svyatoslav. His tutor was Asmund, and the troop commander was Sveinald, the father of Mstikha. The Derevlans then said, "See, we have killed the Prince of Rus'. Let us take his wife Olga for our Prince Mal,⁵⁵ and then we shall obtain possession of Svyatoslav, and work our will upon him." So they sent their best men, twenty in number, to Olga by boat, and they arrived below Borichev in their boat. At that time, the water flowed below the heights of Kiev, and the inhabitants did not live in the valley, but upon the heights. The city of Kiev was on the present site of the residence of Gordyata and Nicephorus, and the prince's palace was in the city where the residence of Vratislav and Chudin now stands, while the hunting grounds were outside the city. Without the city stood another palace, where the palace of the Cantors is now situated, behind the Church of the Holy Virgin upon the heights. This was a palace with a stone hall.⁵⁶

Olga was informed that the Derevliaus had arrived, and summoned them to her presence with a gracious welcome. When the Derevliaus had thus announced their arrival, Olga replied with an inquiry as to the reason of their coming. The Derevliaus (56) then announced that their tribe had sent them to report that they had slain her husband, because he was like a wolf, crafty and ravening, but that their princes, who had thus preserved the land of Dereva, were good, and that Olga should come and marry their Prince Mal. For the name of the Prince of Dereva was Mal.

Olga made this reply, "Your proposal is pleasing to me; indeed, my husband cannot rise again from the dead. But I desire to honor you tomorrow in the presence of my people. Return now to your boat, and remain there with an aspect of arrogance. I shall send for you on the morrow, and you shall say, 'We will not ride on horses nor go on foot; carry us in our boat.' And you shall be carried in your boat." Thus she dismissed them to their vessel.

Now Olga gave command that a large deep ditch should be dug in the castle with the hall, outside the city. Thus, on the morrow, Olga, as she sat in the hall, sent for the strangers, and her messengers approached them and said, "Olga summons you to great honor." But they replied, "We will not ride on horseback nor in wagons, nor go on foot; carry us in our boats." The people of Kiev then lamented, "Slavery is our lot. Our Prince is killed, and our Princess intends to marry their prince." So they carried the Derevliaus in their boat. The latter sat on the cross-benches in great robes, puffed up with pride. They thus were borne into the court before Olga, and when the men had brought the Derevliaus in, they dropped them into the trench along with the boat. Olga bent over and inquired whether they found the honor to their taste. They answered that it was worse than the death of Igor'. She then commanded that they should be buried alive, and they were thus buried.

Olga then sent messages to the Derevliaus to the effect that, if they really required her presence, they should send after her their distinguished men, so that she might go (57) to their Prince with due honor, for otherwise her people in Kiev would not let her go. When the Derevliaus heard this message, they gathered together the best men who governed the land of Dereva, and sent them to her. When the Derevliaus arrived, Olga commanded that a bath should be made ready, and invited them to appear before her after they had bathed. The bath-house was then heated, and the Derevliaus entered in to bathe. Olga's

men closed up the bathhouse behind them, and she gave orders to set it on fire from the doors, so that the Derevlans were all burned to death.

Olga then sent to the Derevlans the following message, "I am now coming to you, so prepare great quantities of mead in the city where you killed my husband, that I may weep over his grave and hold a funeral feast for him." When they heard these words, they gathered great quantities of honey and brewed mead. Taking a small escort, Olga made the journey with ease, and upon her arrival at Igor's tomb, she wept for her husband. She bade her followers pile up a great mound and when they had piled it up, she also gave command that a funeral feast should be held. Thereupon the Derevlans sat down to drink, and Olga bade her followers wait upon them.

The Derevlans inquired of Olga where the retinue was which they had sent to meet her. She replied that they were following with her husband's bodyguard. When the Derevlans were drunk, she bade her followers fall upon them, and went about herself egging on her retinue to the massacre of the Derevlans. So they cut down five thousand of them; but Olga returned to Kiev and prepared an army to attack the survivors.

6454 (946). Olga, together with her son (58) Svyatoslav, gathered a large and valiant army, and proceeded to attack the land of the Derevlans. The latter came out to meet her troops, and when both forces were ready for combat, Svyatoslav cast his spear against the Derevlans. But the spear barely cleared the horse's ears, and struck against his leg, for the prince was but a child. Then Sveinald and Asmund said, "The prince has already begun battle; press on, vassals, after the prince." Thus they conquered the Derevlans, with the result that the latter fled, and shut themselves up in their cities.

Olga hastened with her son to the city of Iskorosten', for it was there that her husband had been slain, and they laid siege to the city. The Derevlans barricaded themselves within the city, and fought valiantly from it, for they realized that they had killed the prince, and to what fate they would in consequence surrender.

Olga remained there a year without being able to take the city, and then she thought out this plan. She sent into the town the following message: "Why do you persist in holding out? All your cities have surrendered to me and submitted to tribute, so that the inhabitants now cultivate their fields and their lands in peace. But you had rather die of hunger, without submitting to tribute." The Derevlans replied that they would be glad to submit to tribute, but that she was still bent on avenging her husband. Olga then answered, "Since I have already

avenged the misfortune of my husband twice on the occasions when your messengers came to Kiev, and a third time when I held a funeral feast for him, I do not desire further revenge, but am anxious to receive a small tribute. After I have made peace with you, I shall return home again."

The Derevlans then inquired what she desired of them, and expressed their readiness to pay honey and furs. Olga retorted that at the moment they had neither honey nor furs, (59) but that she had one small request to make. "Give me three pigeons," she said, "and three sparrows from each house. I do not desire to impose a heavy tribute, like my husband, but I require only this small gift from you, for you are impoverished by the siege." The Derevlans rejoiced, and collected from each house three pigeons and three sparrows, which they sent to Olga with their greetings. Olga then instructed them, in view of their submission, to return to their city, promising that on the morrow she would depart and return to her own capital. The Derevlans re-entered their city with gladness, and when they reported to the inhabitants, the people of the town rejoiced.

Now Olga gave to each soldier in her army a pigeon or a sparrow, and ordered them to attach by a thread to each pigeon and sparrow a piece of sulphur bound with small pieces of cloth. When night fell, Olga bade her soldiers release the pigeons and the sparrows. So the birds flew to their nests, the pigeons to the cotes, and the sparrows under the eaves. Thus the dove-cotes, the coops, the porches, and the haymows were set on fire. There was not a house that was not consumed, and it was impossible to extinguish the flames, because all the houses caught fire at once. The people fled from the city, and Olga ordered her soldiers to catch them. Thus she took the city and burned it, and captured the elders of the city. Some of the other captives she killed, while she gave others as slaves to her followers. The remnant she left to pay (60) tribute.⁵⁷

She imposed upon them a heavy tribute, two parts of which went to Kiev, and the third to Olga in Vyshgorod; for Vyshgorod was Olga's city.⁵⁸ She then passed through the land of Dereva, accompanied by her son and her retinue, establishing laws and tribute. Her trading posts and hunting-preserves are there still. Then she returned with her son to Kiev, her city, where she remained one year.

6455 (947). Olga went to Novgorod, and along the Msta she established trading-posts and collected tribute. She also collected imposts and tribute along the Luga.⁵⁹ Her hunting-grounds, boundary posts, towns, and trading-posts still exist throughout the whole region, while

her sleighs stand in Pskov to this day. Her fowling preserves still remain on the Dnieper and the Desna, while her village of Ol'zhichi⁶⁰ is in existence even now. After making these dispositions, she returned to her city of Kiev, and dwelt at peace with it.

6456-6463 (948-955). Olga went to Greece, and arrived at Tsar'grad. The reigning Emperor was named Constantine, son of Leo.⁶¹ Olga came before him, and when he saw that she was very fair of countenance and wise as well, the Emperor wondered at her intellect. He conversed with her and remarked that she was worthy to reign with him in his city. (61) When Olga heard his words, she replied that she was still a pagan, and that if he desired to baptize her, he should perform this function himself; otherwise, she was unwilling to accept baptism. The Emperor, with the assistance of the Patriarch, accordingly baptized her.

When Olga was enlightened, she rejoiced in soul and body. The Patriarch, who instructed her in the faith, said to her, "Blessed art thou among the women of Rus', for thou hast loved the light, and quit the darkness. The sons of Rus' shall bless thee to the last generation of thy descendants." He taught her the doctrine of the Church, and instructed her in prayer and fasting, in almsgiving, and in the maintenance of chastity. She bowed her head, and like a sponge absorbing water, she eagerly drank in his teachings. The Princess bowed before the Patriarch, saying, "Through thy prayers, Holy Father, may I be preserved from the crafts and assaults of the devil!" At her baptism she was christened Helena, after the ancient Empress, mother of Constantine the Great. The Patriarch then blessed her and dismissed her.⁶²

After her baptism, the Emperor summoned Olga and made known to her that he wished her to become his wife. But she replied, "How can you marry me, after yourself baptizing me and calling me your daughter? For among Christians that is unlawful, as you yourself must know." Then the Emperor said, "Olga, you have outwitted me." He gave her many gifts of gold, silver, silks, and various vases, and dismissed her, still calling her his daughter.

Since Olga was anxious to return home, she went to the Patriarch to request his benediction for the homeward journey, and said to him, "My people and my son are heathen. May God protect me from all evil!" The Patriarch replied, "Child of the faith, thou hast been baptized into Christ and hast put on Christ. Christ (62) shall therefore save thee. Even as he saved Abraham from Abimelech, Lot from the Sodomites, Moses from Pharaoh, David from Saul, the Three Children from the fiery furnace, and Daniel from the wild beasts, he will preserve thee

likewise from the devil and his snares." So the Patriarch blessed her, and she returned in peace to her own country, and arrived in Kiev.

Thus it was when the Queen of Ethiopia came to Solomon, wishing to hear his words of wisdom, and beheld much wisdom and many wonders. Even so, the sainted Olga sought the blessed wisdom of God. But the Queen sought human wisdom, while Olga sought divine wisdom. For those who seek for wisdom shall find it. "Wisdom is celebrated in places of concourse, she lifteth up her voice in the streets; she crieth at the entrance to the walls, at the gates of cities she uttereth speech. For as many years as the just cleave to wisdom, they shall not be ashamed." (*Prov.*, i, 20-22).

From her youth up, the sainted Olga always sought wisdom in this world, and she found a pearl of great price, which is Christ. For Solomon has said, "The accomplished desire of the faithful is sweet to the soul" (*Prov.*, xiii, 19); and, "Incline thine heart to wisdom; I love them that love me, and those that seek me shall find me" (*ibid.*, xi, 2). And the Lord saith, "He who cometh to me I will not cast out" (*John*, vi, 38).

Thus Olga arrived in Kiev, and the Greek Emperor sent a message to her, saying, "Inasmuch as I bestowed many gifts upon you, you promised me that on your return to Rus' you would send me many presents of slaves, wax, and furs, (63) and despatch soldiery to aid me." Olga made answer to the envoys that if the Emperor would spend as long a time with her in the Pochayna⁶³ as she had remained on the Bosphorus, she would grant his request. With these words, she dismissed the envoys.⁶⁴

Now Olga dwelt with her son Svyatoslav, and she urged him to be baptized, but he would not listen to her suggestion, though when any man wished to be baptized, he was not hindered, but only mocked. For to the infidels, the Christian faith is foolishness. They do not comprehend it, because they walk in darkness and do not see the glory of God. Their hearts are hardened, and they can neither hear with their ears nor see with their eyes. For Solomon has said, "The deeds of the unrighteous are far from wisdom. Inasmuch as I have called you, and ye heard me not, I sharpened my words, and ye understood not. But ye have set at nought all my counsel, and would have none of my reproach. For they have hated knowledge, and the fear of Jehovah they have not chosen. They would none of my counsel, but despised all my reproof" (*Prov.*, i, 24-31).

Olga remarked oftentimes, "My son, I have learned to know God, and am glad for it. If you know him, you too will rejoice." But he did

not heed her exhortation, answering, "How shall I alone accept another faith? My followers will laugh at that." But his mother replied, "If you are converted, all your subjects will perforce follow your example." Svyatoslav did not heed his mother, but followed heathen usages, for he did not know that whoever does not obey his mother shall come to distress. For it is written, "Whosoever heedeth not his father or his mother (64) shall suffer death (*Exod.*, xxi, 17). But he was incensed at his mother for this reason. As Solomon has said, "He that correcteth the unrighteous getteth to himself reviling, and he that reproveth a wicked man getteth himself a blot. Rebuke not the evil, lest he hate thee" (*Prov.*, ix, 7-8). For rebuke addressed to evildoers provokes offence.

But notwithstanding, Olga loved her son Svyatoslav, and said, "So be the will of God. If God wishes to have pity upon my kin and upon the land of Rus', let him lead my son's heart to return to God, even as God has granted me to do." Thus saying, she prayed night and day for her son and for the people, while she brought him up to manhood and adult age.

6464-6472 (956-964). When Prince Svyatoslav had grown up and matured, he began to collect a numerous and valiant army. Stepping light as a leopard, he undertook many campaigns. Upon his expeditions he carried with him neither wagons nor kettles, and boiled no meat, but cut off small strips of horseflesh, game, or beef, and ate it after roasting it on the coals. Nor did he have a tent, but he spread out a horse-blanket under him, and set his saddle under his head; (65) and all his retinue did likewise. He sent messengers to the other lands announcing his intention to attack them. He went to the Oka and the Volga, and on coming in contact with the Vyatichians, he inquired of them to whom they paid tribute. They made answer that they paid a silver-piece per ploughshare to the Khazars.

6473 (965). Svyatoslav sallied forth against the Khazars.⁶⁵ When they heard of his approach, they went out to meet him with their Prince, the Kagan, and the armies came to blows. When the battle thus took place, Svyatoslav defeated the Khazars and took their city of Bela Vezha. He also conquered the Yasians and the Kasogians.⁶⁶

6474 (966). Svyatoslav conquered the Vyatichians and made them his tributaries.⁶⁷

6475 (967). Svyatoslav marched to the Danube to attack the Bulgarians. When they fought together, Svyatoslav overcame the Bulgarians, and captured eighty towns along the Danube. He took up

his residence there, and ruled in Pereyaslavets, receiving tribute from the Greeks.⁶⁸

6476 (968). While Svyatoslav was at Pereyaslavets, the Pechenegs invaded Rus' for the first time. So Olga shut herself up in the city of Kiev with her grandsons, Yaropolk, Oleg, and Vladimir.⁶⁹ The nomads besieged the city with a great force. They surrounded it with an innumerable multitude, so that it was impossible to escape or send messages from the city, and the inhabitants were weak from hunger and thirst. Those who had gathered on the other side of the Dnieper in their boats remained on that side, and not one of them could enter Kiev, while no one could cross over to them from the city itself.

(66) The inhabitants of the city were afflicted, and lamented, "Is there no one that can reach the opposite shore and report to the other party that if we are not relieved on the morrow, we must perforce surrender to the Pechenegs?" Then one youth volunteered to make the attempt, and the people begged him to try it. So he went out of the city with a bridle in his hand, and ran among the Pechenegs shouting out a question whether anyone had seen a horse. For he knew their language, and they thought he was one of themselves. When he approached the river, he threw off his clothes, jumped into the Dnieper, and swam out. As soon as the Pechenegs perceived his action, they hurried in pursuit, shooting at him the while, but they did not succeed in doing any harm. The party on the other shore caught sight of him, and rowed out in a boat to meet him. They then took him into their boat, and brought him to their company. He thus reported to them that if they could not relieve the city on the next day, the inhabitants would surrender to the Pechenegs.

Then their general, Pretich by name, announced, "Tomorrow we shall approach by boat, and after rescuing the Princess and the young Princes, we shall fetch them over to this side. If we do not bring this to pass, Svyatoslav will put us to death." When it was morning, they embarked before dawn in their boats, and blew loudly on their trumpets. The people within the city raised a shout, so that the Pechenegs thought the Prince himself had returned, and accordingly fled from the city in various directions. Thus Olga went forth with her grandsons and her followers to the boats. When the Prince of the Pechenegs perceived their escape, he came alone to Pretich, the general, and inquired who had just arrived. Pretich replied that it was a boat from the opposite bank. The Prince of the Pechenegs inquired whether Pretich was the Prince himself. The general then replied that he was

the Prince's vassal, and that he had come as a vanguard, (67) but that a countless force was on the way under the Prince's command. He made this statement simply to frighten the Pechenegs. So the Prince of the Pechenegs invited Pretich to become his friend, to which request Pretich assented. The two shook hands on it, and the Prince of the Pechenegs gave Pretich his spear, sabre, and arrows, while the latter gave his own breastplate, shield, and sword. The Pechenegs raised the siege, and for a time the inhabitants could no longer water their horses at the Lÿbed' on account of the retreating enemy.

But the people of Kiev sent to Svyatoslav, saying, "Oh Prince, you visit and frequent foreign lands. But while you neglect your own country, the Pechenegs have all but taken us captive, along with your mother and your children as well. Unless you return to protect us, they will attack us again, if you have no pity on your native land, on your mother in her old age, and on your children." When Svyatoslav heard these words, he quickly bestrode his charger, and returned to Kiev with his retinue. He kissed his mother and his children, and regretted what they had suffered at the hands of the Pechenegs. He therefore collected an army, and drove the Pechenegs out into the steppes. Thus there was peace.

6477 (969). Svyatoslav announced to his mother and his boyars, "I do not care to remain in Kiev, but should prefer to live in Pereyaslavets on the Danube, since that is the centre of my realm, where all riches are concentrated; gold, silks, wine, and various fruits from Greece, silver and horses from Hungary and Bohemia, and from Rus' furs, wax, honey, and slaves." But Olga made reply, "You behold me in my weakness. Why do you desire to depart from me?" For she was already in precarious health. (68) She thus remonstrated with him and begged him first to bury her and then to go wheresoever he would. Three days later Olga died.⁷⁰ Her son wept for her with great mourning, as did likewise her grandsons and all the people. They thus carried her out, and buried her in her tomb. Olga had given command not to hold a funeral feast for her, for she had a priest who performed the last rites over the sainted Princess.

Olga was the precursor of the Christian land, even as the day-spring precedes the sun and as the dawn precedes the day. For she shone like the moon by night, and she was radiant among the infidels like a pearl in the mire, since the people were soiled, and not yet purified of their sin by holy baptism. But she herself was cleansed by this sacred purification. She put off the sinful garments of the old Adam, and was clad in the new Adam, which is Christ. Thus we say to her, "Rejoice in the

Russes' knowledge of God," for we were the first fruits of their reconciliation with Him.

She was the first from Rus' to enter the kingdom of God, and the sons of Rus' thus praise her as their leader, for since her death she has interceded with God in their behalf. The souls of the righteous do not perish. As Solomon has said, "The nations rejoice in the praise of the righteous, for his memory is eternal, since it is acknowledged by God and men" (*Prov.*, xxix, 2; *Wis.*, iii, 4). For all men glorify her, as they behold her lying there in the body for many years. As the prophet has said, "I will glorify them that glorify me." (*I Sam.*, ii, 30) Of such persons David also said, "The righteous shall be had in everlasting remembrance, he shall not be afraid of evil tidings. His heart is fixed, trusting in Jehovah, his heart is fixed, and (69) will not be moved" (*Ps.*, cxii, 7-8). And Solomon said, "The righteous live forever, and they have reward from God and grace from the Most High. Therefore shall they receive the kingdom of beauty, and the crown of goodness from the hand of the Lord. With his right hand will he cover them, and with his arm will he protect them." (*Wis.*, v, 16-17) For he protected the sainted Olga from the devil, our adversary and our foe.

6478 (970). Svyatoslav set up Yaropolk in Kiev and Oleg in Dereva. At this time came the people of Novgorod asking for themselves a prince. "If you will not come to us," said they, "then we will choose a prince of our own." Svyatoslav replied that they had need of a prince, but Yaropolk and Oleg both refused, so that Dobrynya suggested that the post should be offered to Vladimir. For Vladimir was son of Malusha, stewardess of Olga and sister of Dobrynya. Their father was Malk of Lyubech, and Dobrynya was thus Vladimir's uncle. The citizens of Novgorod thus requested Svyatoslav to designate Vladimir to be their prince, and he went forth to Novgorod with Dobrynya, his uncle.⁷¹ But Svyatoslav departed thence to Pereyaslavets.

6479 (971). Svyatoslav arrived before Pereyaslavets, and the Bulgarians fortified themselves in the city. They made one sally against Svyatoslav; there was great carnage, and the Bulgarians came off victors. But Svyatoslav cried to his soldiery, "Here is where we fall! Let us fight bravely, brothers and companions!" Toward evening, Svyatoslav finally gained the upper hand, and took the city by storm. He then sent messages to the Greeks, announcing his intention to march against them and capture their city, as he had taken Pereyaslavets.⁷² The Greeks replied that they were in no position to offer resistance, and therefore begged him to accept tribute (70) instead for himself and his soldiery, requesting him to notify them how many Russes there

were, so that they might pay so much per head. The Greeks made this proposition to deceive the Russes, for the Greeks are crafty even to the present day. Svyatoslav replied that his force numbered twenty thousand, adding ten thousand to the actual number, for there were really but ten thousand Russes. So the Greeks armed one hundred thousand men to attack Svyatoslav, and paid no tribute.

Svyatoslav advanced against the Greeks, who came out to meet the Russes. When the Russes perceived their approach, they were terrified at the multitude of the Greek soldiery, and Svyatoslav remarked, "Now we have no place whither we may flee. Whether we will or no, we must give battle. Let us not disgrace Rus', but rather sacrifice our lives, lest we be dishonored. For if we flee, we shall be disgraced. We must not take to flight, but we will resist boldly, and I will march before you. If my head falls, then look to yourselves." Then his warriors replied, "Wherever your head falls, there we too will lay down our own." So the Russes went into battle, and the carnage was great. Svyatoslav came out victor, but the Greeks fled. Then Svyatoslav advanced toward the capital fighting as he went, and destroying towns that stand deserted even to the present time.

The Emperor summoned his boyars to the palace, and inquired what they should do, for they could not withstand Svyatoslav's onslaught. The boyars advised that he should be tempted with gifts, to discover whether Svyatoslav liked gold and silks. So they sent to Svyatoslav gold and silks, carried by a clever envoy. To the latter they gave command to look well upon his eyes, his face, and his spirit. The envoy took the gifts, and went out to Svyatoslav. It was reported to the Prince that Greeks had come bringing greetings, and he ordered that they should be introduced. They then came near and (71) greeted him, laying before him the gold and the silks. Svyatoslav, without noticing the presents, bade his servants keep them. So the envoys returned before the Emperor; and the Emperor summoned his boyars. Then the envoys reported that when they had come before Svyatoslav and offered their gifts, he had taken no notice of them, but had ordered them to be retained. Then another courtier said, "Try him a second time; send him arms."

This suggestion was adopted, and they sent to Svyatoslav a sword and other accoutrements which were duly brought before him. The Prince accepted these gifts, which he praised and admired, and returned his greetings to the Emperor. The envoys went back to the Emperor and reported what had occurred. Then the boyars remarked, "This man must be fierce, since he pays no heed to riches, but accepts

arms. Submit to tribute." The Emperor accordingly requested Svyatoslav to approach no nearer, but to accept tribute instead. For Svyatoslav had indeed almost reached Tsar'grad. So the Greeks paid him tribute, and he took also the share of those Russes who had been slain, promising that their families should receive it. He accepted many gifts besides, and returned to Pereyaslavets with great acclaim.

Upon observing the small number of his troops, Svyatoslav reflected that if haply the Greeks attacked him by surprise, they would kill his retinue and himself. For many warriors had perished on the expedition. So he resolved to return to Rus' for reinforcements. He then sent envoys to the Emperor in Silistria (for the Emperor was then at that place) indicating his intention to maintain peaceful and friendly relations. When the Emperor heard this message, he rejoiced, and sent to Svyatoslav gifts even more valuable than the former ones. Svyatoslav accepted these gifts, and on taking counsel with his retinue declared, "If we do not make peace with the Emperor, and he discovers how few of us there are, the Greeks will come and besiege us in our city. Rus' is far away, and the Pechenegs are hostile to us. So who will give us aid? Let us rather make peace with (72) the Emperor, for the Greeks have offered tribute; let that suffice. But if the Emperor stops paying tribute, we shall once more collect troops in Rus' in still greater numbers, and march again on Tsar'grad." His speech pleased his followers, and they sent their chief men to the Emperor. The envoys arrived in Silistria, and reported to the Emperor. He summoned them before him on the following day, and gave them permission to state their errand. They then replied, "Thus says our Prince: 'I desire to maintain true amity with the Greek Emperor henceforth and forever.'" The Emperor rejoiced, and commanded his scribe to set down on parchment the words of Svyatoslav. One envoy recited all his words, and the scribe wrote them down. He spoke as follows:

"This is a copy of the treaty concluded by Svyatoslav, Prince of Rus' and by Sveinald, with Johannes surnamed Tzimiskes, written down by Theophilus the secretary in Silistria during the month of July, in the year 6479 (971), the fourteenth of the indiction. I, Svyatoslav, Prince of Rus', even as I previously swore, now confirm by oath upon this covenant that I desire to preserve peace and perfect amity with each of the great Emperors, and particularly with Basil and Constantine, and with their successors inspired of God, and with all their subjects. In this resolve concur all Russes under my sway, (73) both boyars, and commons, forever. I will therefore contemplate no attack upon your territory, nor will I collect an army or foreign mercenaries for

this purpose, nor will I incite any other foe against your realm or against any territory pertaining thereto, and particularly the district of Kherson, or the cities adjacent, or against Bulgaria. But if any foe plans to attack your realm, I will resist him and wage war upon him. And even as I have given oath to the Greek Emperors in company with my boyars and all my subjects, so may we preserve this treaty inviolate. But if we fail in the observance of any of the aforesaid stipulations, either I or my companions, or my subjects, may we be accursed of the god in whom we believe, namely, of Perun and Volos, the god of flocks, and we become yellow as gold, and be slain with our own weapons. Regard as truth what we have now covenanted with you, even as it is inscribed upon this parchment and sealed with our seals."

After making peace with the Greeks, Svyatoslav journeyed by boat to the cataracts of the Dnieper, and the general, Sveinald, advised him to ride the falls on horseback, for the Pechenegs were encamped in the vicinity. The Prince did not heed him, but went on by boat. The people of Pereyaslavets informed the Pechenegs that Svyatoslav was returning to Rus' after seizing from the Greeks great riches and immense booty, but that his troop was small. When the Pechenegs heard this news, they ambuscaded the cataracts, so that when Svyatoslav arrived it was impossible to pass them. So the Prince decided to winter in Belobereg,⁷³ but the Russes had no rations, so that there was a severe famine, and (74) they paid as much as half a *grivna* for a horse's head. But Svyatoslav wintered there nevertheless.

When spring came, in 6480 (972), Svyatoslav approached the cataracts, where Kurya, Prince of the Pechenegs, attacked him; and Svyatoslav was killed. The nomads took his head, and made a cup out of his skull, overlaying it with gold, and they drank from it. But Sveinald returned to Yaropolk in Kiev. Now all the years of Svyatoslav's reign were twenty-eight.

6481 (973). The reign of Yaropolk began.

6482-6483 (974-975). The son of Sveinald, Lyut by name, was devoted to hunting, and went out of Kiev to chase wild beasts in the forest. Oleg once saw him, and inquired who he was. He was informed that it was the son of Sveinald; then he rode up and killed him, for Oleg was hunting too. Therefore there sprung up a feud between Yaropolk and Oleg, and Sveinald was continually egging Yaropolk on to attack his brother and seize his property, because he wished to avenge his son.

6484-6485 (976-977). Yaropolk marched against his brother Oleg into the district of Dereva. Oleg sallied out to meet him, and they came

to blows. When the companies fought, Yaropolk overcame Oleg. Where Oleg fled with his warriors into the town called Vruchiy, there was a bridge across a moat to the city gates, and as the soldiery pressed hard on each other's heels, they fell into the moat. Oleg also was pushed from the bridge into the ditch; many men fell in, and the horses crushed the soldiers.

When Yaropolk entered (75) his brother's city, he seized the latter's property, and sent in search of him. Upon looking for Oleg, Yaropolk's men were unable to find him, until one native of Dereva reported that he had seen Oleg pushed off the bridge the night before. So Yaropolk sent men to look for his brother. They dragged bodies from the moat from morning till noon, and found Oleg also under the other corpses. They carried him away and laid him upon a rug. Then Yaropolk came and wept over him, and remarked to Sveinald, "See the fulfillment of your wish." So they buried Oleg in the city of Vruchiy, and his tomb is there to this day. Yaropolk seized his property. Now Yaropolk had a Greek wife who had been a nun. For Svyatoslav, his father, had brought her home, and married her to Yaropolk on account of the beauty of her countenance. When Vladimir in Novgorod heard that Yaropolk had killed Oleg, he was afraid, and fled abroad. Then Yaropolk sent his lieutenants to Novgorod, and was thus the sole ruler in Rus'.

6486-6488 (978-980). Vladimir returned to Novgorod with Varangian allies,⁷⁴ and instructed the lieutenants of Yaropolk to return to the latter and inform him that Vladimir was advancing against him prepared to fight. He remained in Novgorod, and sent word to Rogvolod in Polotsk that he desired his daughter to wife. Rogvolod inquired of his daughter whether she wished to marry Vladimir. "I will not," she replied, (76) "draw off the boots of a slave's son, but I want Yaropolk instead." Now Rogvolod had come from overseas, and exercised the authority in Polotsk just as Tur̃y, from whom the Turovians get their name, had done in Turov. The servants of Vladimir returned and reported to him all the words of Rogned, the daughter of Rogvolod, Prince of Polotsk. Vladimir then collected a large army, consisting of Varangians, Slavs, Chuds, and Krivichians, and marched against Rogvolod. At this time, the intention was that Rogned should marry Yaropolk. But Vladimir attacked Polotsk, killed Rogvolod and his two sons, and after marrying the prince's daughter, he proceeded against Yaropolk.⁷⁵

Vladimir came to Kiev with a large force. Yaropolk could not resist him, but shut himself up in Kiev with his people and with Blud.

Vladimir came to a halt at Dorogozhich, and entrenched himself between there and Kapich⁷⁶; his earthwork is there to this day. Vladimir then sent treacherous proposals to Blud, Yaropolk's general, saying, "Be my friend; if I kill my brother, I will regard you as my father, and you shall have much honor from me. It was not I who began to fight with my brother, but he, and I was for that reason overcome by fear, and therefore have come out against him." Blud replied to the messengers of Vladimir that he would join with him in sincere friendship.

Alas, the evil treachery of men! As David says, "He who did eat of my bread hath lifted up his heel against me" (*Ps.*, xli, 9). For this man plotted treacherously against his prince. And it is further written, "Their tongues have spoken falsely. Hold them guilty, oh God, let them fall by their own counsels; (77) thrust them out in the multitude of their transgressions, for they have angered thee, oh Lord" (*Ps.*, v, 10-11). David has likewise said, "Bloodthirsty and deceitful men shall not live out half their days" (*Ps.*, lv, 23). This is evil counsel upon which they enter for the shedding of blood. Those men are mad who, after receiving honor and gifts from their prince or their lord, think on the life of their prince to destroy it; they are worse than devils. It was thus that Blud betrayed his prince after receiving many honors from him. He became guilty of his blood.

Blud shut himself up with Yaropolk with the intention of betraying him, and he sent frequent messages to Vladimir, urging him to storm the city while he himself planned how he might kill Yaropolk. But on account of the citizens, it was not possible to kill him. So Blud, not being able to destroy him thus, contrived it by means of a ruse, while he urged the prince not to go forth from the city to fight. Thus he craftily suggested to Yaropolk that the people of Kiev were sending messages to invite Vladimir to attack the town so that they might betray Yaropolk into his hands, and advised him to flee from the city. Yaropolk heeded his suggestion, and he fled from Vladimir. He then shut himself up in the city of Rodnya⁷⁷ at the mouth of the Ros', while Vladimir entered the city of Kiev, and then laid siege to Yaropolk at Rodnya. There was a great famine there, and we have to this day a proverb which speaks of famine as in Rodnya.

Blud then said to Yaropolk, "Do you see what a large force your brother has? We cannot overcome them. Make peace with your brother." He spoke thus as he plotted treachery against him. But Yaropolk assented. Blud then sent word to Vladimir (78) that he would bring Yaropolk before him, in accordance with his wishes. Vladimir, upon hearing these tidings, went to his father's castle with the hall, of

which we previously made mention, and settled there with his retinue. Blud next induced Yaropolk to appear before his brother and express his readiness to accept any terms he might offer. Yaropolk thus went in person to Vladimir, though he had been previously warned by Varyazhko not to go. "My Prince," said he, "they will kill you. Flee rather to the Pechenegs and collect an army." But the prince heeded him not. Yaropolk came accordingly before Vladimir, and when he entered the door, two Varangians stabbed him in the breast with their swords, while Blud shut the doors and would not allow his men to follow him. Thus Yaropolk was slain. When Varayazhko saw that Yaropolk was murdered, he fled from the castle to the Pechenegs, in whose company he fought long against Vladimir till the latter won him over only with difficulty by means of a sworn pledge.

Now Vladimir had intercourse with his brother's wife, a Greek woman, and she became pregnant, and from her was born Svyatopolk.⁷⁸ From a sinful root evil fruit is produced, inasmuch as his mother had been a nun, and besides Vladimir had intercourse with her without having married her. Svyatopolk was therefore born in adultery, and for this reason his father did not love him; for he had two fathers, Yaropolk and Vladimir.

At this time, the Varangians said to Vladimir, "This city belongs to us, and we took it; hence we desire tribute from it at the rate of two *grivny* per man." Vladimir requested them to wait until the marten skins should be collected (79) a month thence. They waited a month and he gave them nothing, so that the Varangians protested that he had deceived them, and requested that they should be dismissed to Greece. The Prince urged them to go their way. He then selected from their number the good, the wise, and the brave men, to whom he assigned cities, while the rest departed for Tsar'grad in Greece.⁷⁹ But in advance of them Vladimir sent couriers bearing this message: "Varangians are on their way to your country. Do not keep many of them in your city, or else they will cause you such harm as they have done here. Scatter them therefore in various localities, and do not let a single one return this way."

Vladimir then began to reign alone in Kiev, and he set up idols on the hills outside the castle with the hall: one of Perun, made of wood with a head of silver and a mustache of gold, and others of Khors, Dazh'bog, Stribog, Simar'gl, and Mokosh'.⁸⁰ The people sacrificed to them, calling them gods, and brought their sons and their daughters to sacrifice them to these devils. They desecrated the earth with their offerings, and the land of Rus' and this hill were defiled with blood.

But our gracious God desires not the death of sinners, and upon this hill now stands a church dedicated to St. Basil, as we shall later narrate.⁸¹

But let us return to our subject.

Vladimir had appointed his uncle Dobrynya to rule over Novgorod. When Dobrynya came to Novgorod, he set up an idol beside the river Volkhov, and the people of Novgorod offered sacrifice to it as if to God himself. Now Vladimir was overcome by lust for women. His lawful wife was Rogned, whom he settled on the (80) Lybed', where the village of Predslavino now stands.⁸² By her he had four sons: Izyaslav, Mstislav, Yaroslav, and Vsevolod, and two daughters. The Greek woman bore him Svyatopolk; by one Czech he had a son Vysheslav; by another, Svyatoslav and Mstislav; and by a Bulgarian woman, Boris and Gleb. He had three hundred concubines at Vyshgorod, three hundred at Belgorod, and two hundred at Berestovo in a village still called Berestovoe.⁸³ He was insatiable in vice. He even seduced married women and violated young girls, for he was a libertine like Solomon. For it is said that Solomon had seven hundred wives and three hundred concubines. He was wise, yet in the end he came to ruin. But Vladimir, though at first deluded, eventually found salvation. Great is the Lord, and great is his power, and of his wisdom there is no end.

The charm of woman is an evil thing. As Solomon in his repentance said of woman: "Listen not to an evil woman. Honey flows from the lips of a licentious woman, and for a time it delights thy palate. But in the end it will become bitterer than wormwood. They who cleave to her shall die in hell; for she walks not in the path of life, but unstable and foolish are her ways" (*Prov.*, v, 3-6). Thus spoke Solomon of adulteresses, but of a good woman he said, "More precious is she than jewels. Her husband rejoices in her, for she brings him blessedness (81) all the days of her life. She seeks wool and flax, she makes useful things with her hands. She is like a merchant ship that goes out for trade and collects great riches. She rises also while it is yet night, she gives food to the household and tasks to the servants. She considered a field and has bought it, with the fruit of her hands she has planted a vineyard. She has girded up her loins with strength, and has made firm her arm for labor. She has proved how good it is to labor, and her candle goes not out by night. She sets her hands to useful things, and her fingers work with the spindle. She stretches out her hand to the poor, and has given her wealth to the beggar. Her husband is not concerned with the household; wherever she may be, her family is

clothed. Double garments she makes for her husband, scarlet and purple are her robes. Her husband is distinguished within the gates when he sits in council with the elders and the inhabitants of the land. She has made garments and sold them. She has opened her lips with wisdom, she speaks fittingly with her tongue. She is clothed in strength and grace. Her almsgivings have raised and enriched her children, and her husband has commended her. For a wise woman is blessed; let her praise the fear of God. Give her the fruit of her lips, that they may praise her husband within the gates" (*Prov.*, xxxi, 10 ff.).

6489 (981). Vladimir marched upon the Lyakhs and took their cities: Peremýshl', Cherven, and other towns, all of which are subject to Rus' even to this day.⁸⁴ In the same year, he conquered the Vyatichians, and imposed (82) upon them tribute according to the number of their ploughs, just as his father had done.⁸⁵

6490 (982). The Vyatichians went to war, but Vladimir attacked them and conquered them a second time.

6491 (983). Vladimir marched on the Yatvingians, conquered them, and seized their territory.⁸⁶ He returned to Kiev, and together with his people made sacrifice to the idols. The elders and the boyars then proposed that they should cast lots for a youth and a maiden, and sacrifice to the gods whomsoever the lot should fall upon.

Now there was a certain Varangian whose house was situated by the spot where now stands the Church of the Holy Virgin which Vladimir built. This Varangian had immigrated from Greece. He adhered to the Christian faith, and he had a son, fair in face and in heart, on whom, through the devil's hatred, the lot fell. For the devil, though he had dominion over all the rest, could not suffer this youth. He was like a thorn in the devil's heart, and the accursed one was eager to destroy him, and even aroused the people thereto. Messengers thus came and said to the father, "Since the lot has fallen upon your son, the gods have claimed him as their own. Let us therefore make sacrifice to the gods." But the Varangian replied, "These are not gods, but only idols of wood. Today it is, and tomorrow it will rot away. These gods do not eat, or drink, or speak; they are fashioned by hand out of wood. But the God whom the Greeks serve and worship is one; it is he who has made heaven and earth, the stars, the moon, the sun, and mankind, and has granted him life upon earth. But what have these gods created? They are themselves manufactured. (83) I will not give up my son to devils." So the messengers went back and reported to the people. The latter took up arms, marched against the Varangian and his son, and on breaking down the stockade about his house, found

him standing with his son upon the porch. They then called upon him to surrender his son that they might offer him to the gods. But he replied, "If they be gods, they will send one of their number to take my son. What need have you of him?" They straightway raised a shout, and broke up the structure under them. Thus the people killed them, and no one knows where they are buried.⁸⁷

For at this time the Russes were ignorant pagans. The devil rejoiced thereat, for he did not know that his ruin was approaching. He was so eager to destroy the Christian people, yet he was expelled by the true cross even from these very lands. The accursed one thought to himself, "This is my habitation, a land where the apostles have not taught nor the prophets prophesied." He knew not that the Prophet had said, "I will call those my people who are not my people" (*Hosea*, ii, 23). Likewise it is written of the Apostles, "Their message has gone out into all the earth and their words to the end of the world" (*Ps.*, xix, 5). Though the Apostles have not been there in person, their teachings resound like trumpets in the churches throughout the world. Through their instruction we overcome the hostile adversary, and trample him under our feet. For likewise did the Holy Fathers trample upon him, and they have received the heavenly crown in company with the holy martyrs and the just.

6492 (984). Vladimir attacked the Radimichians. His general was named Wolf's Tail, and Vladimir sent him on ahead. He met the Radimichians by the river Pishchan', and overcame (84) them.⁸⁸ Therefore the Russes ridiculed the Radimichians, saying that the men on the Pishchan' fled in the presence of a wolf's tail. Now the Radimichians belong to the race of the Lyakhs. They had come and settled in these regions, and pay tribute to the Russes, an obligation which they maintain to the present day.

6493 (985). Accompanied by his uncle Dobrynya, Vladimir set out by boat to attack the Bulgars.⁸⁹ He also brought Torks⁹⁰ overland on horseback, and conquered the Bulgars. Dobrynya remarked to Vladimir, "I have seen the prisoners, who all wear boots. They will not pay us tribute. Let us rather look for foes with bast shoes." So Vladimir made peace with the Bulgars, and they confirmed it by oath. The Bulgars declared, "May peace prevail between us till stone floats and straw sinks." Then Vladimir returned to Kiev.

6494 (986). Vladimir was visited by Bulgars of Mohammedan faith,⁹¹ who said, "Though you are a wise and prudent prince, you have no religion. Adopt our faith, and revere Mahomet." Vladimir inquired what was the nature of their religion. They replied that they

believed in God, and that Mahomet instructed them to practice circumcision, to eat no pork, to drink no wine, and, after death, promised them complete fulfillment of their carnal desires. "Mahomet," they asserted, "will give each man seventy fair women. He may choose one fair one, and upon that woman will Mahomet confer the charms of them all, and she shall be his wife. Mahomet promises that one may then satisfy every desire, but whoever is poor in this world (85) will be no different in the next." They also spoke other false things which out of modesty may not be written down. Vladimir listened to them, for he was fond of women and indulgence, regarding which he heard with pleasure. But circumcision and abstinence from pork and wine were disagreeable to him. "Drinking," said he, "is the joy of the Russes. We cannot exist without that pleasure."

Then came the Germans, asserting that they were come as emissaries of the Pope.⁹² They added, "Thus says the Pope: 'Your country is like our country, but your faith is not as ours. For our faith is the light. We worship God, who has made heaven and earth, the stars, the moon, and every creature, while your gods are only wood.'" Vladimir inquired what their teaching was. They replied, "Fasting according to one's strength. But whatever one eats or drinks is all to the glory of God, as our teacher Paul has said." Then Vladimir answered, "Depart hence; our fathers accepted no such principle."

The Jewish Khazars heard of these missions, and came themselves saying, "We have learned that Bulgars and Christians came hither to instruct you in their faiths. The Christians believe in him whom we crucified, but we believe in the one God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob." Then Vladimir inquired what their religion was. They replied that its tenets included circumcision, not eating pork or hare, and observing the Sabbath. The Prince then asked where their native land was, and they replied that it was in Jerusalem. When Vladimir inquired where that was, they made answer, "God was angry (86) at our forefathers, and scattered us among the gentiles on account of our sins. Our land was then given to the Christians." The Prince then demanded, "How can you hope to teach others while you yourselves are cast out and scattered abroad by the hand of God? If God loved you and your faith, you would not be thus dispersed in foreign lands. Do you expect us to accept that fate also?"

Then the Greeks sent to Vladimir a scholar,⁹³ who spoke thus: "We have heard that the Bulgarians came and urged you to adopt their faith, which pollutes heaven and earth. They are accursed above all men, like Sodom and Gomorrah, upon which the Lord let fall

burning stones, and which he buried and submerged. The day of destruction likewise awaits these men, on which the Lord will come to judge the earth, and to destroy all those who do evil and abomination. For they moisten their excrement, and pour the water into their mouths, and anoint their beards with it, remembering Mahomet. The women also perform this same abomination, and even worse ones." Vladimir, upon hearing their statements, spat upon the earth, saying, "This is a vile thing."

Then the scholar said, "We have likewise heard how men came from Rome to convert you to their faith. It differs but little from ours, for they commune with wafers, called *oplatki*, which God did not give them, for he ordained that we should commune with bread. For when he had taken bread, the Lord gave it to his disciples, saying, 'This is my body broken (87) for you.' Likewise he took the cup, and said, 'This is my blood of the New Testament.' They do not so act, for they have modified the faith." Then Vladimir remarked that the Jews had come into his presence and had stated that the Germans and the Greeks believed in him whom they crucified. To this the scholar replied, "Of a truth we believe in him. For some of the prophets foretold that God should be incarnate, and others that he should be crucified and buried, but arise on the third day and ascend into heaven. "For the Jews killed the prophets, and still others they persecuted. When their prophecy was fulfilled, our Lord came down to earth, was crucified, arose again, and ascended into heaven. He awaited their repentance for forty-six years, but they did not repent, so that the Lord let loose the Romans upon them. Their cities were destroyed, and they were scattered among the gentiles, under whom they are now in servitude."

Vladimir then inquired why God should have descended to earth and should have endured such pain. The scholar then answered and said, "If you are desirous of hearing the story, I shall tell you from the beginning why God descended to earth." Vladimir replied, "Gladly would I hear it." Whereupon the scholar thus began his narrative:

"In the beginning, God created heaven and earth on the first day. Upon the second, he created the land which is in the midst of the water. Upon this same day, the waters were divided. A part of them was elevated above the land, and a part placed below it. On the third day, he created the sea, the rivers, the springs, and the seeds. On the fourth, God made the sun, the moon, and the stars, and thus adorned the heavens. When the foremost of the angels, the chief of the angelic host, beheld these works, he reflected and said, 'I shall descend to the

earth and seize upon it. (88) I shall then be like to God, and shall establish my throne upon the northern clouds.' But God cast him straightway out of heaven, and in his train fell the tenth order of the angels, who had been subject to him. The name of this adversary was Sathanael, in whose place God set Michael as chief, while Satan, after sinning in his devices and falling from the former glory, is now called the adversary of God.

"Subsequently, upon the fifth day, God created whales, fishes, reptiles, and feathered fowl. On the sixth, God created beasts, cattle, and terrestrial reptiles. He also created man. Upon the seventh day, which is the Sabbath, God rested from his labors. He set up Paradise at the east in Eden. There he placed man, whom he had created, and bade him eat of every tree save one, namely, the tree of the understanding of good and evil. Thus Adam was in Paradise beholding God, and glorified him when the angels glorified him.

"Now God cast a drowsiness upon Adam, and he slept. Then God took from him one rib, and made him a wife, whom he brought to Adam in Paradise. Then Adam said 'This is bone of my bone and flesh of my flesh,' and she was called woman. Adam gave names to the cattle and the birds, the beasts and the reptiles; to man and to woman an angel gave names. God subjected the beasts and the cattle to Adam's rule; he ruled over them and they obeyed his word.

"When the devil saw how God honored man, he hated him. Changing himself into a serpent, he approached Eve and inquired of her, 'Why do you not eat of the tree that stands in the middle of Paradise?' The woman made answer to the serpent, 'God has said: "Ye must not eat of it, or ye shall die the death."' Then the serpent said, 'You shall not die the death. God knew (89) that upon the day when you eat of it, your eyes be opened, and you shall be as God understanding good and evil.' Now the woman saw that the tree was good to eat, so she ate of it, and gave of it to her husband. They ate, and their eyes were opened, so that they realized that they were naked, and plaited for themselves girdles of fig-leaves.

"Then God said, 'The earth is accursed of your deeds, and ye shall live in sorrow all the days of your life. If ye stretch out your hand and pluck the fruit of the tree of life, ye will live forever.' So the Lord God drove Adam out of Paradise. He sat opposite the gate of Paradise weeping and tilling the soil, and Satan rejoiced that the earth was accursed. This was the first fall of man, and his bitter punishment, in that he lost the angelic life.

"Adam begot Cain and Abel. Cain was a plowman, and Abel a

shepherd. Now Cain offered God of the fruit of the earth, but God did not accept his gifts. But Abel brought him of his firstling lamb, and God accepted the offerings of Abel. Then Satan entered into Cain, and incited him to kill Abel. So Cain said to Abel, 'Let us go into the field.' When they had gone forth, Cain rose up and wished to kill his brother, but he did not know how to compass the deed. But Satan said, 'Take up a stone and smite him.' So Cain took a stone and killed him. Then God said to Cain. 'Where is thy brother?' and Cain replied, 'Am I my brother's keeper?' So God said, 'The blood of thy brother cries aloud to me; thou shalt groan and tremble unto thy life's end.'

"Adam and Eve wept, but the devil rejoiced, saying, (90) 'Behold, him whom God held in honor I have made to depart from God, and now sorrow has come upon him.' So they mourned Abel for thirty years. His body did not decompose, but they did not know how to bury him. Then, by God's command, two birds flew down, and one of them died. The other dug a trench, and placed the dead bird therein, and buried it. When Adam and Eve beheld this, they dug a trench, and placed Abel in it, and buried him thus with sorrow.

"When Adam was two hundred and thirty years old, he begot Seth and two daughters. Cain married one and Seth the other, and from them the race of men multiplied and increased throughout the earth. But they knew not their Creator, and were filled with every vice and uncleanness, with lust and with hatred, and they lived like cattle. Noah was the only just man in the whole race, and he begot three sons, Shem, Ham, and Japheth. God said, 'My spirit shall not abide among men; I will destroy what I have created, both man and beast.' Then the Lord God said to Noah, 'Build an ark three hundred cubits long and fifty cubits broad, and thirty cubits high (for a *sazhen* was called a cubit).' The ark was one hundred years building, but Noah foretold that there was to be a flood, and the people mocked him. When the ark was finished, the Lord said to Noah, 'Enter into it thyself and thy wife, and thy sons, and thy daughters-in-law. Take with thee two each of all beasts, birds, and reptiles.' So Noah led them into the ark as the Lord had enjoined him.

"Then God brought a flood upon the earth, and drowned all flesh, but the ark floated upon the water. When the waters had subsided, Noah and (91) his sons and his wife went forth, and by them the earth was peopled. There were many men with but one language, and they said one to another, 'Let us build a tower as high as heaven.' They even began to build it with Nimrod as their chief. But God said, 'Men

have multiplied, and their devices are vain.' Then God descended, and divided the nations into seventy-two peoples. But the tongue of Adam was not taken away from Eber, for he alone had not joined in their vanity, saying, 'If God had bidden men to build a tower as high as heaven, he would have ordained it with a word, even as he created the heavens, the earth, the sea, and all things visible and invisible.' Therefore Eber's language was unaltered, and from him are descended the Hebrews.

"The human race was thus divided into seventy-two nations and scattered throughout the world, each one having its own customs. Following the devil's instruction, they sacrificed to trees, springs, and rivers, and did not know God. Between Adam and the Flood, two thousand and forty years passed, and between the Flood and the division of the nations, five hundred and twenty-nine years. Subsequently, the devil cast mankind into yet greater error, so that they undertook to build idols, some of wood, some of brass, others of marble, and still others of gold and silver. They not only worshipped them, but even brought their sons and daughters and killed them before these images, so that all the earth was defiled.

"The author of idolatry was Serug, for he made idols in the name of dead men, kings, heroes, magicians, and evil women. Serug begot (92) Terah, and Terah begot three sons, Abraham, Nahor, and Haran. Terah built idols, having learned the art from his father. But Abraham, having come to reason, looked up to heaven, and upon observing the stars and the sky, said, 'In truth, that is God, and those that my brother makes only deceive men.' Then Abraham announced, 'I will test the gods of my father,' and he inquired, 'Father, why do you deceive men by making idols of wood? It is God who has made heaven and earth.' Abraham then set fire to the idols in the temple. When Haran, Abraham's brother, saw this act, in his zeal for the idols he endeavored to save them, and was himself consumed, so that he died before his father. For prior to that time, no son had passed away before his father, but the father had always died before his son; from this time forth, sons began to perish before their fathers.

"God loved Abraham, and said to him, 'Go forth out of the house of thy father into the land to which I shall guide thee. I shall make of thee a nation, and the generations of the earth shall bless thee.' And Abraham did as the Lord ordained. So Abraham took his nephew Lot (for Lot was both his brother-in-law and his nephew, since Abraham had married his brother's daughter Sarai); and he came to a high oak in the land of Canaan. God said to Abraham, 'To thy seed will

I give this land.' Then Abraham worshipped God. Now Abraham was seventy-five years old when he went out of Haran. But Sarai was barren, and since she was afflicted with her sterility, Sarai said to Abraham, 'Have intercourse with (93) my maid-servant.' So Sarai took Hagar and gave her to Abraham, who had intercourse with her. She conceived and bore a son, and Abraham called him Ishmael. Abraham was eighty-six years old when Ishmael was born. Afterward, Sarai conceived and bore a son, and called his name Isaac. Then God directed Abraham to circumcise the child, and he duly circumcised him on the eighth day. God loved Abraham and his race. He called them his people, and distinguished them from the Gentiles by calling them his own.

"When Isaac was grown up, Abraham, having lived one hundred and seventy years, died and was buried. When Isaac was sixty, he begot two sons, Esau and Jacob. Esau was crafty and Jacob truthful. Jacob served his uncle seven years for his younger daughter, but Laban did not give her to him, saying, 'Take the elder instead.' He thus gave him Leah, the elder, but for the younger demanded of him seven years' further service. So Jacob served seven more years for Rachel and married the two sisters. By them he begot eight sons: Reuben, Simeon, Levi, Judah, Issachar, Zabulon and Asser. From these brothers the Jews are sprung.

"Jacob went to Egypt when he was one hundred and thirty years old, accompanied by his kin to the number of sixty-five souls. He lived in Egypt seventeen years before his death, and his race was in captivity four hundred years. During these years, the Jewish people increased and multiplied, (94) but the Egyptians crushed them with toil. At this time, Moses was born among the Jews, and the Egyptians informed the King a child was born among the Jews who should destroy Egypt. Then the King gave orders to cast the growing children of the Jews into the river. But Moses' mother, fearing his destruction, took the infant and laid him in a basket, and set him in the water.

"At this moment, Thermuthi, the daughter of Pharaoh, went down to bathe, and on seeing the child floating there, she rescued him and named him Moses, and brought him up. The child was fair, and was four years old when the daughter of Pharaoh brought him before her father. When Pharaoh saw Moses, he fancied the child. Moses seized him around the neck, knocked the crown from the King's head, and stamped upon it. A magician who beheld this act protested to the King, 'Oh King, destroy this child, for if you do not destroy him he

will ruin all Egypt.' The King heeded him not, but gave command that no more of the Jewish children be killed.

"When Moses grew to manhood, he was great in the house of Pharaoh. But when another King came to the throne, the nobles hated him. Then Moses, since he had killed an Egyptian who was persecuting a Jew, fled from Egypt, and came to the land of Midian. As he was making his way across the desert, he learned from the angel Gabriel about the nature of the whole world, of the first man, what happened after him, about the flood, the confusion of the tongues, the age of each man, the movement and the number of the stars, the dimensions of the earth, (95) and all wisdom. Thereafter God appeared to him in the burning bush, and said to him, 'I have seen the oppression of my people in Egypt, and have descended to take them from the hands of the Egyptians, and lead them forth from the land. Go therefore to Pharaoh, king of Egypt, and say unto him, "Set Israel free, that they may perform sacrifice to God for three days." If the King of Egypt heed thee not, I will smite him with all my wonders.'

"When Moses came before Pharaoh, the King did not heed him. Then God sent ten plagues upon him: rivers of blood, frogs, gnats, dogflies, cattle-plague, burning vesicles, hail, locusts, three days' darkness, and pestilence among the population. Ten plagues were thus visited upon Egyptians, because they drowned the children of the Jews for ten months. But when there was pestilence in Egypt, Pharaoh said to Moses and his brother Aaron, 'Depart hence quickly.' So Moses after gathering the Jews together, departed out of the land of Egypt.

"The Lord led them over the road through the desert to the Red Sea, preceding them by night as a fiery pillar, and by day as a cloud. When Pharaoh heard how the people were escaping, he pursued them, and overtook them by the seaside. When the Jews beheld this, they cried out against Moses, saying, 'Why have you led us out to certain death?' Then Moses called upon God, and the Lord said, 'Why callest thou upon me? Smite the sea with thy staff.' Moses did thus, and the water parted in twain, so that the children of Israel went down into the sea. When Pharaoh beheld this, (96) he pursued them, for the children of Israel were traveling on dry land. But when they reached the shore, the sea closed over Pharaoh and his warriors.

"God loved Israel, and they traveled three days from the sea, and arrived at Marah. There the water was bitter. The people murmured against God, but the Lord showed them a tree, and when Moses placed it in the water, the water was sweetened. Then they still murmured

against Moses and Aaron, saying, "It was better for us in Egypt, where we ate meat, onions, and bread till we were filled." The Lord then said to Moses, 'I have heard the complaint of the children of Israel,' and he gave them manna to eat. Afterward, the Lord revealed the law to them upon Mt. Sinai. But while Moses was with God upon the mountain, the people moulded a calf's head and bowed down before it as if before God himself, and Moses killed three thousand of them.

"Yet again they murmured against Moses and Aaron because there was no water, and the Lord said to Moses, 'Smite the rock with thy rod.' But Moses replied, 'How can water issue from it?' Then the Lord was angry at Moses because he did not glorify him, and for this reason, on account of these murmurings, he did not enter the Promised Land. But Moses died there on the mountain.

"Then Joshua, son of Nun, assumed the leadership. He entered the Promised Land, destroyed the Canaanites, and settled the children of Israel there in their stead. Then, when Joshua died, Judah was judge in his place. There were fourteen other judges. But in their time the people forgot (97) God, who had led them out of Egypt, and they began to serve devils. Then God was wroth, and delivered them over to the violence of the Gentiles. But when they repented, he had mercy upon them. When he had freed them, they returned nevertheless to the worship of devils.

"Next, Eli the priest was judge, and after him, Samuel the prophet. The people said to Samuel, 'Give us a King.' Then the Lord was angered against Israel, and set Saul over them as King. But Saul would not walk in the law of the Lord, so the Lord chose David, and appointed him King over Israel. Now David found favor with God, and to him God swore that a God should be born of his lineage. Thus David began to prophecy concerning the incarnation of God, saying, 'I bore thee from my loins before the morning star' (*Ps.*, xc, 3). He prophesied for forty years, and then died. After him, his son Solomon uttered prophecy. It was he who built a temple to God, and called it the Holy of Holies. He was a wise man, but in the end he fell from grace. He too reigned forty years and then died. After him reigned his son Rehoboam, and in his day the kingdom was divided into two parts, since the Jews lived partly in Jerusalem, and the other portion in Samaria.

"In Samaria reigned Rehoboam, son of Solomon, who made two golden calves, one of which he set up in Bethel on the hill, and the other in Dan, saying, 'These are your gods, oh Israel.' So the people worshiped them and forgot God. Likewise in Jerusalem they forgot

God, and began to worship Baal, called the god of war, who is Ares, and they forgot the God of their fathers. Then God began to send (98) them prophets, and the prophets rebuked them for their iniquities, but when they were rebuked by the prophets, they killed them. Then God was wroth against Israel, and said, 'I shall cast you from me, I shall call other peoples to serve. If they sin, I will not remember their iniquities.'

"So the Lord sent his prophets, saying to them, 'Prophecy of the rejection of the Jews and the calling of the Gentiles.' Hosea was thus the first to prophesy, saying, 'I will cause the kingdom of the house of Israel to cease, I will break the bow of Israel, and I will no more have compassion on the house of Israel. But I will cast them off and reject them, saith the Lord, and they shall be wanderers among the nations' (*Hos.*, i, 4-6; ix, 17). And Jeremiah said, 'If Samuel and Moses arise, I will not have mercy on them' (*Jer.*, xv, i). Further, Jeremiah said, 'Thus saith the Lord: "I have sworn by my great name that my name shall no more be mentioned henceforth by the lips of the Jews"' (*Jer.*, xiv, 26). Likewise Ezekiel said, 'Thus saith the Lord Jehovah: "I will scatter thee and the whole remnant of thee to all the winds, for that thou hast defiled my sanctuaries with thine abominations; I will reject thee and have no more mercy upon thee"' (*Ezek.*, v, 10-11).

"Malachi said, 'I have no pleasure in you, saith Jehovah. From the east to the west my name shall be glorified among the Gentiles. In every place incense shall be offered unto my name, and a pure offering, for great is my name among the Gentiles. Wherefore I will deliver you into exile and to the scorn of all nations' (*Mal.*, i, 10-11; ii, 9). The great Isaiah said, 'Thus saith the Lord: "I will stretch out my hand against (99) thee, I will destroy thee and scatter thee, and restore thee no more"' (*Is.*, i, 25). And further, 'I have hated your feasts and your new moons; your Sabbaths I will not accept' (*Is.*, i, 13-14). Amos the prophet said, 'Hear the word of the Lord: "I will bring mourning upon you; the house of Israel has fallen and was not quick to arise"' (*Amos*, v, 1-2). Malachi said 'Thus saith the Lord: "I will send upon you a curse, and will curse your blessing; I will destroy it, and it shall not be among you"' (*Mal.*, ii, 2).

"Many prophesied of their rejection, and to such prophets God gave his commandment to foretell the calling of other nations in their stead. Thus Isaiah called upon them, saying, 'Law shall go forth from me, and my judgment is the light of nations. My justice approaches quickly; it shall go forth and in my arm shall the Gentiles hope' (*Is.*, li, 4-6). Jeremiah said, 'Thus saith the Lord: "I will establish a new covenant for the house of Judah. I will give laws for their understanding, and

write upon their hearts. I will be their God, and they shall be my people" (Jer., xxi, 31-34). Isaiah said, 'The old things are passed away, but I declare the new. Before their appearance, it has been revealed unto you. Sing unto the Lord a new song. Those who serve me shall be called by a new name, which shall be blessed throughout all the earth. My house shall be called a house of prayer for all nations' (Is., xlii, 9-10; lvi, 5-7). Likewise Isaiah said, 'The Lord will show his right arm before all nations, and all the ends of the earth shall see salvation from our God' (Is., liii, 10). And David said, 'Praise the Lord, all the nations, praise him, all ye people' (Ps., cxviii, 1).

"Since God so loved his new people, he promised (100) to descend among them himself, and to appear as a man in the flesh, and to suffer for the sin of Adam. Thus men began to prophesy concerning the incarnation of God. First David said, 'The Lord said unto my Lord: "Sit upon my right, until I shall set thine enemies as a footstool for thy feet"' (Ps., xc, 1). And again, 'The Lord said unto me: "Thou art my son, this day have I begotten thee"' (Ps., ii, 7). And Isaiah said, 'No ambassador nor messenger, but God himself shall come to save us' (Is., lxiii, 9). And again, 'A child is born to us in whose arm there is authority, and he shall be called the great counsellor of the angels. Great is his might, and of his peace there is no end' (Is., ix, 6). And again, 'Behold, a maiden shall conceive in the womb, and shall bear a son, and they shall call his name Emmanuel' (Is., vii, 14). Micah said, 'Thou, Bethlehem Ephrathah, art scarcely to be of slight account among the thousands of Jews. For out of thee shall come forth a ruler to be prince in Israel, and his going forth is from everlasting. Therefore he will scatter them till the time when the mother travails, and the rest of his brethren return to the sons of Israel' (Mic., x, 2-3). Jeremiah thus said, 'This is our God, and no other shall be compared with him, He has found all the way of wisdom, he has given it to Jacob his servant. Then he appeared on earth and lived among men' (Baruch, iii, 35-38). And again, 'Man exists. But who shall know how God exists or how man dies?' (Jer., xvii, 9). Zachariah said, 'They have not heeded my son, and I will not give ear to them, said the Lord' (Zach., vii, 13). Hosea said, 'Thus saith the Lord: "My flesh is from them"' (Hos., ix, 12).

"Prophecies were likewise uttered also concerning his passion. (101) Thus Isaiah said, 'Woe to their souls! For they have counselled evil counsel, saying, "Let us kill the just man"' (Is., iii, 9-10). Likewise he said, 'Thus saith the Lord: "I will not resist them nor speak against them. I offered my back to wounds and my countenance to blows,

and I turned my face not away from shame and from spitting”’ (*Is.*, i, 5-6). Jeremiah said, ‘Come, let us destroy the tree with the fruit thereof, and cut him off from the land of the living’ (*Jer.*, xii, 19). Moses said of his crucifixion, ‘Thy life shall hang in doubt before thee’ (*Deut.*, xxviii, 66). David said, ‘Why are the nations stirred up’ (*Ps.*, ii, 1). And Isaiah said, ‘He was led like a sheep to the slaughter’ (*Is.*, liii, 7). And Esdras said, ‘Blessed be the Lord: he stretched out his hands and saved Jerusalem’ (?) They spoke also of the resurrection. David said, ‘Rise up, oh Lord, judge the lands for thou shalt inherit all the nations’ (*Ps.*, lxxxii, 8). And likewise, ‘Them the Lord awaked as one out of sleep’ (*Ps.*, lxxviii, 65) and also, ‘Let God arise, let his enemies be scattered’ (*Ps.*, lxviii, 1). Likewise, ‘Arise, oh Jehovah; oh God, lift up thy hand’ (*Ps.*, x, 12). Isaiah said, ‘Ye who walk into the land and the shadow of death, upon you shall shine the light’ (*Is.*, ix, 2). And Zachariah said, ‘In the blood of thy covenant thou hast freed the captives from the waterless pit’ (*Zach.*, ix, 11). Many things were prophesied concerning him, all of which have been fulfilled.”

Then Vladimir inquired, “When was this fulfilled? Has it happened or is it yet to occur?” The scholar answered him and said:

“All was accomplished when God was incarnate. (102). For as I said before, when the Jews killed the prophets and their kings transgressed against the law, he gave them over to destruction, and they were led into captivity into Assyria because of their sins. They labored there seventy years. Then they returned to their native land, but had no king. Thus the high priests ruled over them until the time of the foreigner Herod, who reigned over them. During his reign, in the year 5500, the Angel Gabriel was sent to Nazareth to the Virgin Mary, of the tribe of David. He said unto her, ‘Rejoice, thou who art happy, the Lord is with thee.’ In consequence of this Annunciation, she conceived the Word of God in her womb, and bore a son, and called his name Jesus.

“Now behold, wise men came from the east, saying, ‘Where is he who is born king of the Jews? For we have seen his star in the east, and are come to worship him.’ When King Herod heard this, he was troubled, and all Jerusalem with him. And having called together the scribes and the elders of the people, he asked of them where the Christ should be born. They made reply, ‘In Bethlehem of the Jews.’ When Herod heard these words, he gave the command to slay all children under two years of age. So his soldiers went forth and killed the children. But in her fear, Mary hid the Child, and Joseph, together with Mary, took the Child and fled into Egypt, where they remained until

the death of Herod. In Egypt, the angel of the Lord appeared to Joseph, saying, 'Arise, take the Child and his mother, and return to the land of Israel.'

(103) "When he thus returned, he settled in Nazareth. After the Child grew up, and had reached the age of thirty years, he began to perform miracles, and to preach the kingdom of God. He chose twelve followers whom he called his disciples, and he began to work great marvels; to raise the dead, to cleanse lepers, to heal the lame, to give sight to the blind, and to perform many miracles, even as the prophets had foretold concerning him, saying, 'He healed our sicknesses and cured our diseases' (*Is.*, liii, 4). He was baptized by John in the Jordan, showing regeneration to mankind. When he was baptized, behold, the heavens were opened, and the Spirit descended upon him in the form of a dove, and a voice said, 'This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased.'

"He sent out his disciples to preach the kingdom of God and repentance for the remission of sins. Desirous of fulfilling the prophecy, he began to preach how the Son of Man should suffer, be crucified, and rise again on the third day. While he was teaching in the Temple, the high priests and the scribes, inspired by hatred, set out to kill him, and after taking him captive, they led him before Pilate, the governor. When Pilate discovered that they had arrested him without charge, he desired to release him, but they said, 'If you release this man, you cannot be a friend of Caesar.' Pilate then commanded that they should crucify him. So they led him to the Place of the Skull and crucified him there. And darkness was over all the earth from the sixth hour until the ninth, and at the ninth hour, Jesus gave up the ghost. The veil of the Temple was rent in twain, and many dead arose, whom (104) he bade depart to Paradise.

"When they took him from the Cross, they laid him in a tomb, and the Jews sealed the tomb with a seal, and stationed guards there, saying, 'Perhaps his disciples will steal him away.' Then, upon the third day, he arose, and having arisen from the dead, he appeared to his disciples, saying to them, 'Go among all the nations, and teach all the peoples baptism in the name of the Father and the Son and the Holy Ghost.' He remained with them forty days, appearing to them after the resurrection. When the forty days had elapsed, he bade them go to the Mount of Olives, and there he appeared to them and blessed them, saying, 'Remain in the city of Jerusalem until I send the promise of my Father.' Having thus spoken, he ascended into heaven. They worshipped him, and returned to Jerusalem, where they gathered together

in the Temple. When fifty days were passed, the Holy Spirit descended upon the Apostles. After they had received the promise of the Holy Spirit, they separated throughout the world, teaching and baptizing with water."

Then Vladimir said, "Wherefore was he born of woman, and crucified on the tree, and baptized with water?" The scholar answered:

"Since the human race first sinned through woman, when the devil misled Adam through the agency of Eve so that he was deprived of Paradise, God for this reason avenged himself on the devil. Because of the first woman, victory fell to the devil's lot, for it was through woman that Adam fell from Paradise. God suffered pain upon the tree in order that the devil might be conquered by the tree, and that the righteous might taste of the tree of life. (105) As to the regeneration by water: since in the time of Noah, when sin multiplied among men, God brought the flood upon the earth and drowned mankind with its waters, God said, 'Inasmuch as I destroyed mankind with water because of their sins, I will now wash away the sins of man once more through the regeneration by water.' For the Jewish people were cleansed by the sea from the evil custom of the Egyptians, since water was in the beginning the primary element. For it is said 'The Spirit of God hovered over the face of the waters.' Thus men are now baptized with water and the Spirit.

"The first transfiguration was accomplished by means of water, as Gideon performed it. For when the angel came to him and bade him attack the Midianites, he laid a fleece upon the ground and to test God, Gideon said, 'Let there be dew on the whole earth, but let the fleece remain dry.' And it was so. This miracle signifies that the Gentiles were formerly dry, while the Jews were wet, and how afterward there was dew, that is, among the Gentiles, while dryness prevailed among the Jews. For the prophets had foretold that regeneration should be accomplished by means of water.

"Now that the Apostles have taught men throughout the world to believe in God, we Greeks have inherited their teaching, and the world believes therein. God hath appointed a day, in which he shall come from heaven to judge both the quick and the dead, and to render to each according to his deeds; to the righteous, the kingdom of heaven and ineffable beauty, bliss without end, and eternal life; but to sinners, the torments of hell and a worm that sleeps not, (106) and of their torments there shall be no end. Such shall be the penalties for those who do not believe in our Lord Jesus Christ. The unbaptized shall be tormented with fire."

As he spoke thus, he exhibited to Vladimir a canvas on which was depicted the Judgment Day of the Lord, and showed him, on the right, the righteous going to their bliss in Paradise, and on the left, the sinners on their way to torment. Then Vladimir sighed and said, "Happy are they upon the right, but woe to those upon the left!" The scholar replied, "If you desire to take your place upon the right with the just, then accept baptism! Vladimir took this counsel to heart, saying, "I shall wait yet a little longer," for he wished to inquire about all the faiths. Vladimir then gave the scholar many gifts, and dismissed him with great honor.

6495 (987). Vladimir summoned together his boyars and the city-elders, and said to them, "Behold, the Bulgars came before me urging me to accept their religion. Then came the Germans and praised their own faith; and after them came the Jews. Finally the Greeks appeared, criticizing all other faiths but commending their own, and they spoke at length, telling the history of the whole world from its beginning. Their words were artful, and it was wondrous to listen and pleasant to hear them. They preach the existence of another world. 'Whoever adopts our religion and then dies shall arise and live forever. But whosoever embraces another faith, shall be consumed with fire in the next world.' (107) What is your opinion on this subject, and what do you answer?" The boyars and the elders replied, "You know, oh Prince, that no man condemns his own possessions, but praises them instead. If you desire to make certain, you have servants at your disposal. Send them to inquire about the ritual of each and how he worships God."

Their counsel pleased the prince and all the people, so that they chose good and wise men to the number of ten, and directed them to go first among the Bulgars and inspect their faith. The emissaries went their way, and when they arrived at their destination they beheld the disgraceful actions of the Bulgars and their worship in the mosque; then they returned to their country. Vladimir then instructed them to go likewise among the Germans, and examine their faith, and finally to visit the Greeks. They thus went into Germany, and after viewing the German ceremonial, they proceeded to Tsar'grad, where they appeared before the Emperor. He inquired on what mission they had come, and they reported to him all that had occurred. When the Emperor heard their words, he rejoiced, and did them great honor on that very day.

On the morrow, the Emperor sent a message to the Patriarch to inform him that a Russian delegation had arrived to examine the Greek faith, and directed him to prepare the church and the clergy, and to

array himself in his sacerdotal robes, so that the Russes might behold the glory of the God of the Greeks. When the Patriarch received these commands, he bade the clergy assemble, and they performed the customary rites. They burned incense, and the choirs sang hymns. The Emperor accompanied the Russes to the church, and placed them in a wide space, calling their attention to the beauty of the edifice, the chanting, and the pontifical services and the ministry of the deacons, while he explained to them the worship of his God. The Russes were astonished, (108) and in their wonder praised the Greek ceremonial. Then the Emperors Basil and Constantine invited the envoys to their presence, and said, "Go hence to your native country," and dismissed them with valuable presents and great honor.

Thus they returned to their own country, and the Prince called together his boyars and the elders. Vladimir then announced the return of the envoys who had been sent out, and suggested that their report be heard. He thus commanded them to speak out before his retinue. The envoys reported, "When we journeyed among the Bulgars, we beheld how they worship in their temple, called a mosque, while they stand ungirt. The Bulgar bows, sits down, looks hither and thither like one possessed, and there is no happiness among them, but instead only sorrow and a dreadful stench. Their religion is not good. Then we went among the Germans, and saw them performing many ceremonies in their temples; but we beheld no glory there. Then we went to Greece, and the Greeks led us to the edifices where they worship their God, and we knew not whether we were in heaven or on earth. For on earth there is no such splendor or such beauty, and we are at a loss how to describe it. We only know that God dwells there among men, and their service is fairer than the ceremonies of other nations. For we cannot forget that beauty. Every man, after tasting something sweet, is afterward unwilling to accept that which is bitter, and therefore we cannot dwell longer here." Then the boyars spoke and said, "If the Greek faith were evil, it would not have been adopted by your grandmother Olga who was wiser than all other men." Vladimir then inquired where they should all accept baptism, and they replied that the decision rested with him.

(109) After a year had passed, in 6496 (988), Vladimir proceeded with an armed force against Kherson, a Greek city, and the people of Kherson barricaded themselves therein.⁹⁴ Vladimir halted at the farther side of the city beside the harbor, a bowshot from the town, and the inhabitants resisted energetically while Vladimir besieged the town. Eventually, however, they became exhausted, and Vladimir warned

them that if they did not surrender, he would remain on the spot for three years. When they failed to heed this threat, Vladimir marshalled his troops and ordered the construction of an earthwork in the direction of the city. While this work was under construction, the inhabitants dug a tunnel under the city-wall, stole the heaped-up earth, and carried it into the city, where they piled it up in the center of the town. But the soldiers kept on building, and Vladimir persisted. Then a man of Kherson, Anastasius by name, shot into the Russ camp an arrow on which he had written, "There are springs behind you to the east, from which water flows in pipes. Dig down and cut them off." When Vladimir received this information, he raised his eyes to heaven and vowed that if this hope was realized, he would be baptized. He gave orders straightway to dig down above the pipes, and the water-supply was thus cut off. The inhabitants were accordingly overcome by thirst, and surrendered.

Vladimir and his retinue entered the city, and he sent messages to the Emperors Basil and Constantine, saying, "Behold, I have captured your glorious city. I have also heard that you have an unwedded sister. Unless you give her to me to wife, (110) I shall deal with your own city as I have with Kherson." When the Emperors heard this message they were troubled, and replied, "It is not meet for Christians to give in marriage to pagans. If you are baptized, you shall have her to wife, inherit the kingdom of God, and be our companion in the faith. Unless you do so, however, we cannot give you our sister in marriage." When Vladimir learned their response, he directed the envoys of the Emperors to report to the latter that he was willing to accept baptism, having already given some study to their religion, and that the Greek faith and ritual, as described by the emissaries sent to examine it, had pleased him well. When the Emperors heard this report, they rejoiced, and persuaded their sister Anna to consent to the match. They then requested Vladimir to submit to baptism before they should send their sister to him, but Vladimir desired that the Princess should herself bring priests to baptize him. The Emperors complied with his request, and sent forth their sister, accompanied by some dignitaries and priests. Anna, however, departed with reluctance. "It is as if I were setting out into captivity," she lamented; "better were it for me to die at home." But her brothers protested, "Through your agency God turns the land of Rus' to repentance, and you will relieve Greece from the danger of grievous war. Do you not see how much harm the Russes have already brought upon the Greeks? If you do not set out, they may bring on us the same misfortunes." It was thus that they overcame her hesita-

tion only with great difficulty. The Princess embarked upon a ship, and after tearfully embracing her kinfolk, (111) she set forth across the sea and arrived at Kherson. The natives came forth to greet her, and conducted her into the city, where they settled her in the palace.

By divine agency, Vladimir was suffering at that moment from a disease of the eyes, and could see nothing, being in great distress. The Princess declared to him that if he desired to be relieved of this disease, he should be baptized with all speed, otherwise it could not be cured. When Vladimir heard her message, he said, "If this proves true, then of a surety is the God of the Christians great," and gave order that he should be baptized. The Bishop of Kherson, together with the Princess's priests, after announcing the tidings, baptized Vladimir, and as the Bishop laid his hand upon him, he straightway received his sight. Upon experiencing this miraculous cure, Vladimir glorified God, saying, "I have now perceived the one true God." When his followers beheld this miracle, many of them were also baptized.

Vladimir was baptized in the Church of St. Basil, which stands at Kherson upon a square in the center of the city, where the Khersonians trade.⁹⁵ The palace of Vladimir stands beside this church to this day, and the palace of the Princess is behind the altar. After his baptism, Vladimir took the Princess in marriage. Those who do not know the truth say he was baptized in Kiev, while others assert this event took place in Vasil'ev,⁹⁶ while still others mention other places.

After Vladimir was baptized, (112) the priests explained to him the tenets of the Christian faith, urging him to avoid the deceit of heretics by adhering to the following creeds:

I believe in God, the Father Almighty, Maker of Heaven and Earth; and also: I believe in one God the Father, who is unborn, and in the only Son, who is born, and in one Holy Ghost emanating therefrom: three complete and thinking Persons, divisible in number and personality, but not in divinity; for they are separated without distinction and united without confusion. God the Father Everlasting, abides in Fatherhood, unbegotten, without beginning, himself the beginning and the cause of all things. Because he is unbegotten, he is older than the Son and the Spirit. From him the Son was born before all worlds, and from him the Holy Ghost emanates intemporally and incorporeally. He is simultaneously Father, Son and Holy Ghost.

The Son, being like the Father, is distinguished from the Father and the Spirit in that he was born. The Spirit is Holy, like to the Father and the Son, and is everlasting. The Father possesses Fatherhood, and Son Sonship, and the Holy Ghost Emanation. For the Father

is not transformed into the Son or the Spirit, nor the Son to the Father and the Spirit, nor the Spirit to the Son and the Father, since their attributes are invariable. Not three Gods, but one God, since there is one divinity in three Persons.

In consequence of the desire of the Father and the Spirit to save his creation, he went out of the bosom of the Father, yet without leaving it, to the (113) pure womb of a Virgin, as the seed of God. Entering into her, he took on animated, vocal, and thinking flesh which had not previously existed, came forth God incarnate, and was ineffably born, while his Mother preserved her virginity immaculate. Suffering neither combination, nor confusion, nor alteration, he remained as he was, became what he was not, and assumed the aspect of a slave in truth, not in semblance, being similar to us in every respect except in sin.

Voluntarily he was born, voluntarily he suffered want, voluntarily he thirsted, voluntarily he endured, voluntarily he feared, voluntarily he died in truth and not in semblance. All these were genuine and unimpeachable human sufferings. He gave himself up to be crucified. Though immortal, he tasted death. He arose in the flesh without knowing corruption; he ascended into Heaven, and sat upon the right hand of the Father. And as he ascended in glory and in the flesh so shall he descend once more.

Moreover, I acknowledge one Baptism of water and the Spirit, I approach the Holy Mysteries, I believe in the True Body and Blood, I accept the traditions of the Church, and I venerate the sacred images. I revere the Holy Tree and every Cross, the sacred relics, and the sacred vessels.⁹⁷

Believe, also, they said, in the seven councils of the Church: the first at Nicaea, comprising three hundred and eighteen Fathers, who cursed Arius and proclaimed the immaculate and orthodox faith; the second at Constantinople, attended by one hundred and fifty Fathers, who anathematized Macedonius (who denied the Holy Spirit), and proclaimed the oneness of the Trinity; (114) the third at Ephesus, comprising two hundred Fathers, against Nestorius, whom they cursed, while they also proclaimed the dignity of the Mother of God; the fourth council of six hundred and thirty Fathers held at Chalcedon, to condemn Eutyches and Dioscorus, whom the Holy Fathers cursed after they had proclaimed the Perfect God and the Perfect Man, our Lord Jesus Christ; the fifth council of one hundred and sixty-five Fathers, held at Constantinople, which was directed against the teachings of Origen and Evagrius, whom the Fathers anathematized; the sixth council of one hundred and seventy Holy Fathers, likewise held

at Constantinople, which condemned Sergius and Cyrus, whom the Holy Fathers cursed; and the seventh council, comprising three hundred and fifty Holy Fathers, which was held at Nicaea, and cursed those who do not venerate images.

Do not accept the teachings of the Latins, whose instruction is vicious. For when they enter the church, they do not kneel before the images, but they stand upright before kneeling, and when they have knelt, they trace a cross upon the ground and then kiss it, but they stand upon it when they arise. Thus while prostrate they kiss it, and yet upon arising they trample it underfoot. Such is not the tradition of the Apostles. For the Apostles prescribed the kissing of an upright cross, and also prescribed the use of images. For the Evangelist Luke painted the first image and sent it to Rome. As Basil has said, the honor rendered to the image redounds to its original. Furthermore, they call the earth their mother. If the earth is their mother, then heaven is their father, for in the beginning God made heaven and earth. Yet they say, "Our Father which art in Heaven." If, according to their understanding, the earth is their mother, why do they spit upon (115) their mother, and pollute her whom they caress?

In earlier times, the Romans did not so act, but took part in all the councils, gathering together from Rome and all other Sees. At the first Council in Nicaea, directed against Arius, Silvester sent bishops and priests from Rome, as did Athanasius from Alexandria; and Metrophanes also despatched his bishops from Constantinople. Thus they corrected the faith. At the second council took part Damasus of Rome, Timotheus of Alexandria, Meletius of Antioch, Cyril of Jerusalem, and Gregory the Theologian. In the third council participated Coelestinus of Rome, Cyril of Alexandria, Juvenal of Jerusalem. At the fourth council participated Leo of Rome, Anatolius of Constantinople, and Juvenal of Jerusalem; and at the fifth, Vigilius of Rome, Eutychius of Constantinople, Apollinaris of Alexandria, and Domnus of Antioch. At the sixth council took part Agathon of Rome, Georgius of Constantinople, Theophanes of Antioch, and Peter the Monk of Alexandria; at the seventh, Adrian of Rome, Tarasius of Constantinople, Politian of Alexandria, Theodore of Antioch, and Elias of Jerusalem. These Fathers with the assistance of the bishops, corrected the faith.

After the seventh council, Peter the Stammerer came with the others to Rome and corrupted the faith, seizing the Holy See. (116) He seceded from the Sees of Jerusalem, Alexandria, Constantinople, and Antioch. His partisans disturbed all Italy, disseminating their

teaching in various terms. For some of these priests who conduct services are married to one wife, and others are married to seven. Avoid their doctrine; for they absolve sins against money payments, which is the worst abuse of all. God guard you from this evil, oh Prince!⁹⁸

Hereupon Vladimir took the Princess and Anastasius and the priests of Kherson, together with the relics of St. Clement and of Phoebus his disciple, and selected also sacred vessels and images for the service.⁹⁹ In Kherson he thus founded a church on the mound which had been heaped up in the midst of the city with the earth removed from his embankment; this church is standing at the present day. Vladimir also found and appropriated two bronze statues and four bronze horses, which now stand behind the Church of the Holy Virgin, and which the ignorant think are made of marble. As a wedding present for the Princess, he gave Kherson over to the Greeks again, and then departed for Kiev.

When the Prince arrived at his capital, he directed that the idols should be overthrown, and that some should be cut to pieces and others burned with fire. He thus ordered that Perun should be bound to a horse's tail and dragged down Borichev to the stream.¹⁰⁰ He appointed twelve men to beat the idol with sticks, not because he thought the wood was sensitive, but to affront the demon who had deceived man in this guise, (117) that he might receive chastisement at the hands of men. Great art thou, oh Lord, and marvelous are thy works! Yesterday he was honored of men, but today held in derision. While the idol was being dragged along the stream to the Dnieper, the unbelievers wept over it, for they had not yet received holy baptism. After they had thus dragged the idol along, they cast it into the Dnieper. But Vladimir had given this injunction "If it halts anywhere, then push it out from the bank, until it goes over the falls. Then let it loose." His command was duly obeyed. When the men let the idol go, and it passed through the rapids, the wind cast it out on the bank, which since that time has been called Perun's sandbank, a name that it bears to this very day.

Thereafter Vladimir sent heralds throughout the whole city to proclaim that if any inhabitants, rich or poor, did not betake himself to the river, he would risk the Prince's displeasure. When the people heard these words, they wept for joy, and exclaimed in their enthusiasm, "If this were not good, the Prince and his boyars would not have accepted it." On the morrow, the Prince went forth to the Dnieper with the priests of the Princess and those from Kherson, and a countless multitude assembled. They all went into the water: some stood up to

their necks, others to their breasts, and the younger near the bank, some of them holding children in their arms, while the adults waded farther out. The priests stood by and offered prayers.¹⁰¹ There was joy (118) in heaven and upon earth to behold so many souls saved. But the devil groaned, lamenting, "Woe is me! how am I driven out hence! For I thought to have my dwelling-place here, since the apostolic teachings do not abide in this land. Nor did this people know God, but I rejoiced in the service they rendered unto me. But now I am vanquished by the ignorant, not by apostles and martyrs, and my reign in these regions is at an end."

When the people were baptized, they returned each to his own abode. Vladimir, rejoicing that he and his subjects now knew God himself, looked up to heaven and said, "Oh God, who has created heaven and earth, look down, I beseech thee, on this thy new people, and grant them, oh Lord, to know thee as the true God, even as the other Christian nations have known thee. Confirm in them the true and inalterable faith, and aid me, oh Lord, against the hostile adversary, so that, hoping in thee and in thy might, I may overcome his malice." Having spoken thus, he ordained that wooden churches should be built and established where pagan idols had previously stood. He thus founded the Church of St. Basil on the hill where the idol of Perun and the other images had been set, and where the Prince and the people had offered their sacrifices.¹⁰² He began to found churches and to assign priests throughout the cities, and to invite the people to accept baptism in all the cities and towns.

He took the children of the best families, and sent them for instruction (119) in book-learning. The mothers of these children wept bitterly over them, for they were not yet strong in faith, but mourned as for the dead. When these children were assigned for study, there was fulfilled in the land of Rus' the prophecy which says, "In those days, the deaf shall hear words of Scripture, and the voice of the stammerers shall be made plain" (*Is.*, xxix, 18). For these persons had not ere this heard words of Scripture, and now heard them only by the act of God, for in his mercy the Lord took pity upon them, even as the Prophet said, "I will be gracious to whom I will be gracious" (*Ex.*, xxxiii, 19).

He had mercy upon us in the baptism of life and the renewal of the spirit, following the will of God and not according to our deeds. Blessed be the Lord Jesus Christ, who loved his new people, the land of Rus', and illumined them with holy baptism. Thus we bend the knee before him saying, "Lord Jesus Christ, what reward shall we

return thee for all that thou hast given us, sinners that we are? We can not requite thy gifts, for great art thou, and marvelous are thy works. Of thy majesty there is no end. Generation after generation shall praise thy acts" (*Ps.*, cxlv, 4-5).

Thus I say with David, "Come, let us rejoice in the Lord, let us call upon God and our Savior. Let us come before his presence with thanksgiving, praising him because he is good, for his mercy endureth forever, since he hath saved us from our enemies, even from vain idols" (*Ps.*, xcv, 1-2, cxxxvi, 1, 24). And let us once more say with David, "Sing unto the Lord a new song, sing unto the Lord, all the earth! Sing unto the Lord, praise his name: tell his salvation from day to day. Declare his glory among the heathen, his wonders among all nations" (*Ps.*, xcvi, 1-4). For the Lord is great and greatly praised, (120) and of his majesty there is no end" (*Ps.*, clv, 3). What joy! Not one or two only are saved. For the Lord said, "There is joy in heaven over one sinner that repenteth" (*Math.*, xv, 10). Here not merely one or two, but innumerable multitudes came to God, illumined by holy baptism. As the Prophet said, "I will sprinkle water upon you, and ye shall be purified of your idols and your sins" (*Ezek.*, xxxvi, 25). Another Prophet said likewise, "Who like to God taketh away sins and remitteth transgressions? For he is willingly merciful; he turneth his gaze upon us and sinketh our sins in the abyss" (*Mic.*, vii, 18-19). For Paul says, "Brethren, as many of us as were baptized in Jesus Christ were baptized in his death, and with him, through baptism, we were planted in death, in order that as Christ rose from the dead in the glory of the Father, we also might likewise walk in newness of life" (*Rom.*, vi, 3). And again, "The old things have passed away, and new are made" (*II Cor.*, v, 7); now hath approached our salvation, the night hath passed, the day is at hand" (*Rom.*, xiii, 12); "Thus we obtained access through faith into this grace of which we are proud and through which we exist" (*Rom.*, v, 2). "Now, being freed from sin, and having become servants of the Lord, ye have your fruit in holiness" (*Rom.*, vi, 20).

We are therefore bound to serve the Lord, rejoicing in him, for David said, "Serve the Lord with fear and rejoice in him with trembling" (*Ps.*, ii, 11). We call upon the Lord our God, saying "Blessed be the Lord, who gave us not as prey to their teeth. The net was broken, and we were freed from the crafts of the devil. His glory has perished noisily, but the Lord endures forever, glorified by the sons of Rus', and praised in the Trinity." But the demons (121) are accursed of pious men and righteous women, who have received baptism and repentance

for the remission of sins, and thus form a new Christian people, the elect of God.

Vladimir was enlightened, and his sons and his country with him. For he had twelve sons: Vysheslav, Izyaslav, Yaroslav, Svyatopolk, Vsevolod, Svyatoslav, Mstislav, Boris, Gleb, Stanislav, Pozvzd, and Sudislav. He set Vysheslav in Novgorod, Izyaslav in Polotsk, Svyatopolk in Turov, and Yaroslav in Rostov. When Vysheslav, the oldest, died in Novgorod, he set Yaroslav over Novgorod, Boris over Rostov, Gleb over Murom, Svyatoslav over Dereva, Vsevolod over Vladimir, and Mstislav over Tmutorakan'.¹⁰³ Then Vladimir reflected that it was not good that there were so few towns round about Kiev, so he founded forts on the Desna, the Oster', the Trubezh, the Sula, and the Stugna.¹⁰⁴ He gathered together the best men of the Slavs, and Krivichians, the Chuds, and the Vyatichians, and peopled these forts with them. For he was at war with the Pechenegs, and when he fought with them, he often overcame them.

6497 (989). After these events, Vladimir lived in the Christian faith. With the intention of building a church dedicated to the Holy Virgin, he sent and imported artisans from Greece. After he had begun to build, and the structure was completed, he adorned it with images, and entrusted it to Anastasius of Kherson. He appointed Khersonian priests (122) to serve in it, and bestowed upon this church all the images, vessels, and crosses which he had taken in that city.¹⁰⁵

6499 (991). Vladimir founded the city of Belgorod,¹⁰⁶ and peopled it from other towns, bringing to it many settlers. For he was extremely fond of this city.

6500 (992). Vladimir attacked the Croats.¹⁰⁷ When he had returned from the Croatian War, the Pechenegs arrived on the opposite side of the Dnieper from the direction of the Sula. Vladimir set forth against them, and encountered them on the banks of the Trubezh, where Pereyasavl' now stands. Vladimir took up his position on the near side, and the Pechenegs theirs on the other, and the Russes did not venture to the farther shore any more than their foes did to this side of the river. The Prince of the Pechenegs came down to the river bank, and calling to Vladimir, proposed to him, "Send one of your warriors, and I will detail one of mine, that they may do battle together. If your man conquers mine, let us not fight together for three years to come. But if our champion wins, let us fight three years in succession." Then each prince returned to his own force.

Vladimir returned to his camp, and sent heralds through it to inquire whether there was any man who would fight with the champion

of the Pechenegs. But none was found anywhere. On the morrow, the Pechenegs arrived, bringing their champion; but on our side there was none. Vladimir now began to be concerned as he sought a champion throughout his whole army. Then there came to the Prince an old man who said to him, "Oh Prince, I have a younger son at home. I came forth with four others, (123) but he abides by the hearth. Since his childhood, there has been no man who could vanquish him. One day when I reprimanded him while he was tanning a hide, he flew into a rage at me and tore the leather to bits in his hands." When the Prince heard these words, he rejoiced, and summoned the youth. So he was brought before the Prince, and the Prince informed him of all that had occurred. Then the youth said, "Oh Prince, I know not whether I be capable of this feat; wherefore let them test me. Is there no large and strong bull hereabouts?" Such a bull was soon found, and he directed them to anger the animal. The men put hot irons on him, and then let him go. The bull ran past the youth, and he seized the beast's flank with his hand. He thus pulled off the skin along with as much flesh as he could grasp. Then Vladimir remarked, "You are well qualified to do combat with the champion."

On the morrow the Pechenegs approached, and began to shout, "Is there no champion present? See, ours is ready." Vladimir had given orders that night to rest upon their arms, and at dawn the two champions went forth. The Pechenegs had sent out their man, who was gigantic and fearsome. Vladimir sent forward his champion, and when the Pecheneg saw him, he laughed, for he was of but moderate size. A space was duly measured off between the two armies, and the warriors were allowed to attack each other. They came to grips, and seized upon each other with violence. But the Russ crushed the Pecheneg to death in his arms, and cast him upon the ground. The Russes raised a cheer, and the Pechenegs took to flight. The Russes pursued them, cut them down, and drove them away. In his joy, Vladimir founded a city on this river bank, (124) and called it Pereyaslav',¹⁰⁸ because this youth had won glory there. Vladimir made him and his father great men, and then returned to Kiev with victory and renown.

6502-6504 (994-996). Vladimir, upon seeing his church completed, entered it and prayed to God, saying, "Lord God! Look down from heaven, behold and visit thy vineyard, and perfect what thy right hand has begun. Make these new people, whose heart thou hast turned unto wisdom, to know thee as the true God. Look upon this thy church which I, thine unworthy servant, have builded in the name of the Ever-Virgin Mother of God who bore thee. Through the intercession

of the Immaculate Virgin, hear the supplication of whosoever shall pray in this church." After he had offered this prayer, he added, "I bestow upon this church of the Holy Virgin a tithe of my property and of my cities." Then he wrote out a donation and deposited it in the church, declaring, "If anyone violates this promise, may he be accursed." So he gave the tithe to Anastasius of Kherson, and made a great festival on that day for the boyars and elders of the people, distributing also much largess to the poor.¹⁰⁹

Then the Pechenegs came to Vasil'ev,¹¹⁰ and Vladimir went forth against them with a small company. When the troops met, he could not withstand the enemy, so he fled, and took position (125) under a bridge, where he concealed himself with difficulty from the foe. Then the Prince vowed to build a church of the Sacred Transfiguration in Vasil'ev, for it was upon this day of the Lord's transfiguration that this battle took place. After he had thus escaped, Vladimir founded the church,¹¹¹ and made ready a great festival, for which he caused to be brewed three hundred kettles of mead. He summoned his boyars, his lieutenants, the elders throughout the cities, and many other people, and distributed to the poor the sum of three hundred *grivnĭ*. When the Prince had thus celebrated for eight days, he returned to Kiev on the feast of the Assumption of the Holy Mother of God. There also he held a great festival, and gathered together a countless multitude of people.

When he saw that the people were Christians, he rejoiced in soul and body, and celebrated likewise every year. For he loved the words of the Scriptures, and on one occasion he had heard read in the Gospel, "Blessed are the merciful, for they shall obtain mercy" (*Matt.*, v, 7); and further, "Lay not up for yourselves treasures upon earth, where moth corrupts and thieves steal; but lay up for yourselves treasures in heaven, where neither moth corrupts nor thieves steal" (*Matt.*, vi, 19). And David said, "Blessed is he that considereth the poor" (*Pss.*, xli, 1). Vladimir listened also to the words of Solomon: "He that giveth unto the poor lendeth unto the Lord" (*Prov.*, xix, 17). When he heard these words, he invited each beggar and poor man to come to the Prince's palace and receive whatever he needed, both food and drink, and marten-skins from the treasury.

With the thought that the weak and the sick could not easily reach his palace, he arranged that (126) wagons should be brought in, and after having them loaded with bread, meat, fish, various fruits, mead in casks, and kvass, he ordered them driven out through the city. The drivers were under instructions to call out, "Where is there a poor man

or a beggar who cannot walk?" To such they distributed according to their necessities. Moreover, he caused a feast to be prepared each Sunday in his palace for his subjects, and invited the boyars, the court officers, the centurions, the decurions, and the distinguished citizens, either in the presence of the Prince or in his absence. There was much meat, beef, and game, and an abundance of all victuals. On one occasion, however, after the guests were drunk, they began to grumble against the prince, complaining that they were mistreated because he allowed them to eat with wooden spoons, instead of silver ones. When Vladimir heard of this complaint, he ordered that silver spoons should be moulded for his retinue to eat with, remarking that with silver and gold he could not secure a retinue, but that with a retinue he was in a position to win these treasures, even as his grandfather and his father had sought riches with their followers. For Vladimir was fond of his followers, and consulted them concerning matters of administration, wars, and government. He lived at peace with the neighboring Princes, Boleslav of Poland, Stephen of Hungary, and Udalrich of Bohemia, and there was amity and friendship among them.¹¹²

While Vladimir was thus dwelling in the fear of God, the number of bandits increased, and the bishops, calling to his attention the multiplication of robbers, (127) inquired why he did not punish them. The Prince answered that he feared the sin entailed. They replied that he was appointed of God for the chastisement of malefaction and for the practice of mercy toward the righteous, so that it was entirely fitting for him to punish a robber condignly, but only after due process of law. Vladimir accordingly abolished *wergild* and set out to punish the brigands. The bishops and the elders then suggested that as wars were frequent, the *wergild* might be properly spent for the purchase of arms and horses, to which Vladimir assented. Thus Vladimir lived according to the prescriptions of his father and his grandfather.

6505 (997). When Vladimir went to Novgorod after upland troops with which to fight the Pechenegs (for there was desperate and constant conflict with them), the latter, on perceiving that for the moment there was no prince at hand, came and beset Belgorod.¹¹³ They allowed no sally from the city, and great famine prevailed. Vladimir could not bring succor, for he had no troops with him, and the number of the Pechenegs was great. The siege was thus prolonged, and the famine grew increasingly severe. The inhabitants thus held a council in the city, and said among themselves, "We are about to die of hunger, and no aid is to be expected from the Prince. Is it not better to die? Let us surrender to the Pechenegs, and let them spare some, though

they kill others. We are perishing of famine as it is." Thus they came to a decision. But one old man was not present at the council, and inquired what it was about. The people told him that on the morrow they would surrender to the Pechenegs. Upon hearing this decision, he summoned the city-elders, and remarked that he understood (128) they intended to surrender to the nomads. They replied that the people would not endure famine. Then the ancient said, "Listen to me: do not surrender for three days, and do as I tell you." They gladly promised to obey, and he directed them to collect a measure of oats, wheat, or bran apiece. They gladly went in search of these supplies. Then he bade the women prepare the liquid with which they brew porridge, and ordered them to dig a pit. In this pit he bade them place a tub, and to pour the liquid into the tub. Then he ordered them to dig a second pit, and place a tub in the latter likewise. He next commanded them to bring honey, so they fetched a basket of honey that was stored in the Prince's storeroom. He then bade them dilute it greatly, and to pour it into the tub in the other pit.

Upon the morrow, he directed them to send messengers to the Pechenegs. The citizens went forth to the Pechenegs, and offered them hostages, so that ten of the nomads should come into the city to see what was happening in their town. The Pechenegs rejoiced, thinking that they wished to surrender. They therefore accepted the hostages, and selected the chief men of their own party, whom they sent into the city to look over the town and learn what was occurring. The Pecheneg representatives entered the town, and the inhabitants said to them, "Why do you waste your strength? You cannot overcome us if you besiege us for ten years. We secure our sustenance from the earth. If you do not believe it, behold it with your own eyes." They thus conducted the Pecheneg envoys to the pit (129) where the brew was, then drew some up in a pail and poured it into pots. After they had brewed porridge, they conducted the Pechenegs to the other pit. They hauled up the buckets and after eating from them themselves, offered them to the Pechenegs. The latter were astonished, and exclaimed, "Our princes will not believe this marvel, unless they eat of the food themselves." So they poured out a bowl of brew and buckets of mead from the pits, and gave them to the Pechenegs, who returned to their camp and recounted all that had happened. After brewing the porridge, the Pecheneg princes ate it, and were amazed, and upon recovering their own hostages and returning those given by the city, they raised the siege and returned home.

6506-6508 (998-1000). Malfrid died.¹¹⁴ In this year died also Rogned, Yaroslav's mother.

6509 (1001). In this year died Izyaslav, son of Vladimir and father of Bryachislav.

6510-6511 (1002-1003). In this year died Vseslav, son of Izyaslav and grandson of Vladimir.

6512-6515 (1004-1007). The saints were brought to the Church of the Holy Virgin.¹¹⁵

6516-6519 (1008-1011). The Princess Anna, wife of Vladimir, passed away.

(130) 6520-6522 (1012-1014). When Yaroslav was in Novgorod, he paid two thousand *grivnĭ* a year as tribute to Kiev, and another thousand was given to his garrison in Novgorod. All the lieutenants of Novgorod had always paid like sums, but Yaroslav ceased to render this amount to his father.¹¹⁶ Then Vladimir exclaimed, "Repair roads and build bridges," for he proposed to attack his son Yaroslav, but he fell ill.

6523 (1015). While Vladimir was desirous of attacking Yaroslav, the latter sent overseas and imported Varangian reinforcements, since he feared his father's advance. But God will not give the devil any satisfaction. For when Vladimir fell ill, Boris was with him at the time. Since the Pechenegs were attacking the Russes, he sent Boris out against them, for he himself was very sick, and of this illness he died on July 15. Now he died at Berestovo, but his death was kept secret, for Svyatopolk was in Kiev. But at night his companions took up the flooring between two rooms, and after wrapping the body in a rug, they let it down to the earth with ropes. After they had placed it upon a sledge, they took it away and laid it in the Church of the Virgin that Vladimir himself had built.

When the people heard of this, they assembled in multitude and mourned him, the boyars as the defender of their country, the poor as their protector and benefactor. They placed him in a marble coffin, and buried the body of the sainted Prince amid their mourning.

He is the new Constantine of mighty Rome, who baptized himself (131) and his subjects; for the Prince of Rus' imitated the acts of Constantine himself. Even if he was formerly given to evil lusts, he afterward consecrated himself to repentance, according to the teaching of the Apostle that "when sin increases, there grace abounds the more" (*Rom.*, v, 20).¹¹⁷ Even if he had previously committed other crimes in his ignorance, he subsequently distinguished himself in repentance and almsgiving. As it is written, "As I shall find you, so shall I judge you"

(*Wis.*, xi, 17). Thus the Prophet says, "as I the Lord Adonai live, I desire not the death of a sinner, but rather that he shall turn from his way and live; turn in repentance from your wicked way" (*Ezek.*, xxxiii, 11). For many of those who act justly and live in righteousness turn from the virtuous road to death and are destroyed; while others live unrighteously, yet are admonished before their deaths, and atone for their sins through laudable repentance.

Thus the Prophet says, "The righteousness of the righteous shall not save him in the day of his transgression. When I say to the righteous man, 'Thou shalt live,' if he trust to his righteousness and commit iniquity, all his righteousness shall not be remembered, and he shall die in the iniquity that he hath committed. And when I say to the wicked, 'Thou shalt die the death,' if he turn from his sin and perform equity and justice, restore his pledge, and give back what he hath stolen, then all his sins that he hath committed shall not be remembered, because he performed equity and justice, and in them shall he live. I shall judge each of you according to his way, oh house of Israel" (*Ezek.*, xxxiii, 12-16, 20).

Vladimir died in the orthodox faith. He effaced his sins by repentance and by almsgiving, which is better than all things else. For the Lord says, "I desire alms, and not a sacrifice" (*Matt.*, ix, 13). Alms are better and more exalted than all other things, since they lead us into the presence of God, even to heaven itself; as the angel said to Cornelius, "Thy prayers and thy almsgiving are remembered before God" (*Acts*, x, 4).

It is indeed marvelous what benefits Vladimir conferred upon the land of Rus' by its conversion. But we, though Christians, do not render him honor in proportion to this benefaction. For if he had not converted us, we should now be a prey to the crafts of the devil, even as our ancestors perished. If we had been zealous for him, and had offered our prayers to God in his behalf upon the day of his death, then God, beholding our zeal, would have glorified him. It is fitting for us to pray God for his sake, inasmuch as through him we have come to know God. But may God grant thee according to thy heart's desire and fulfill all thy requests, giving thee the kingdom of heaven which thou didst desire! May God confer upon thee the crown among the righteous, happiness in paradisiacal sustenance, and association with Abraham and the other patriarchs! As Solomon said, "When a righteous man dieth, his hope is not lost" (*Prov.*, xi, 7). The people of Rus', mindful of their holy baptism, hold this Prince in pious memory, and glorify God in prayers and hymns and psalms, singing to God

as his new people, enlightened by his Holy Spirit, maintaining the hope of our great God and of our Savior Jesus Christ, that He will give each one of us joy ineffable according to his labors. And may such be the lot of all Christians.¹¹⁸

(132) Upon his father's death, Svyatopolk settled in Kiev,¹¹⁹ and after calling together all the inhabitants of Kiev, he began to distribute largess among them. They accepted it, but their hearts were not with him, because their brethren were with Boris. When Boris returned with the army, without meeting the Pechenegs, he received the news that his father was dead. He mourned deeply for him, for he was beloved of his father before all the rest.

When he came to the Al'ta,¹²⁰ he halted. His father's retainers then urged him to take his place in Kiev on his father's throne, since he had at his disposal the latter's retainers and troops. But Boris protested, "Be it not for me to raise my hand against my elder brother. Now that my father has passed away, let him take the place of my father in my heart." When the soldiery heard these words, they departed from him, and Boris remained with his servants.

But Svyatopolk was filled with lawlessness. Adopting the device of Cain, he sent messages to Boris that he desired to live at peace with him, and would increase the territory he had received from his father. But he plotted against him now how he might kill him. So Svyatopolk came by night to Vyshgorod. After secretly summoning to his presence Put'sha and the boyars of the town, he inquired of them whether they were whole-heartedly devoted to him. Put'sha and the men of Vyshgorod replied, "We are ready to lay down our lives for you." He then commanded them to say nothing to any man, but to go and kill his brother Boris. They straightway promised to execute his order. Of such men Solomon has well said, "They make haste to shed blood unjustly. For they (133) promise blood, and gather evil. Their path runneth to evil, for they possess their souls in dishonor" (*Prov.*, i, 16-19).

These emissaries came to the Al'ta, and when they approached, they heard the sainted Boris singing matins. For it was already known to him that they intended to take his life. Then he arose and began to chant, saying, "Oh Lord, how are they increased who come against me! Many are they that rise up against me" (*Ps.*, iii, 1). And also, "Thine arrows have pierced me, for I am ready for wounds and my pain is before me continually" (*Ps.*, xxxviii, 2, 17), and he also uttered this prayer: "Lord, hear my prayer, and enter not into judgment with thy servant, for no living man shall be just before thee. For the enemy hath crushed my soul" (*Ps.*, cxi, 1-3). After ending the six psalms,

when he saw how men were sent out to kill him, he began to chant the Psalter, saying, "Strong bulls encompassed me, and the assemblage of the evil beset me. Oh Lord my God, I have hoped in thee; save me and deliver me from the pursuers" (*Ps.*, xxii, 12, 16; vii, 1). Then he began to sing the canon. After finishing matins, he prayed, gazing upon the eikon, the image of the Lord, with these words: "Lord Jesus Christ, who in this image hast appeared on earth for our salvation, and won, having voluntarily suffered thy hands to be nailed to the Cross, didst endure thy passion for our sins, so help me now to endure my passion. For I accept it not from those who are my enemies, but from the hand of my own brother. Hold it not against him as a sin, oh Lord!"

After offering this prayer, he lay down upon his couch. (134) Then they fell upon him like wild beasts about the tent, and pierced him with lances. They stabbed Boris and his servant, who cast himself upon his body. For he was beloved of Boris. He was a servant of Hungarian race, George by name, to whom Boris was greatly attached. The Prince had given him a large gold necklace which he wore while serving him. They also killed many other servants of Boris. But since they could not quickly take the necklace from George's neck, they cut off his head, and thus obtained it. For this reason his body was not recognized later among the corpses.

The desperadoes, after attacking Boris, wrapped him in a canvas, loaded him upon a wagon, and dragged him off, though he was still alive. When the impious Svyatopolk saw that he was still breathing, he sent two Varangians to finish him. When they came and saw that he was still alive, one of them drew his sword and plunged it into his heart. Thus died the blessed Boris, receiving from the hand of Christ our God the crown among the righteous. He shall be numbered with the Prophets and the Apostles, as he joins with the choirs of martyrs, rests in the lap of Abraham, beholds joy ineffable, chants with the angels, and rejoices in company with the choirs of saints. After his body had been carried in secret to Vyshgorod, it was buried beside the Church of St. Basil.¹²¹

The desperate murderers, (135) godless wretches that they were, returned to Svyatopolk in hope of commendation. The names of these contemners of the law are Put'sha, Talets, Elovit, and Lyashko, and their father was Satan himself. For such servants are devils, since devils are sent to do evil, and angels to do good. An angel does no harm to man, but, instead, thinks constantly of his good. Angels render help to Christians, and protect them against their adversary the devil. But

devils always seek after evil, and hate man, since they behold him honored of God. Because they envy him, they are swift in their evil mission. An evil man, eager for crime, is worse than a devil, because devils at least fear God, whereas an evil man neither fears God nor is ashamed before men. Devils fear the Cross of the Lord, but an evil man does not even fear the Holy Cross.

The impious Svyatopolk then reflected, "Behold, I have killed Boris; now how can I kill Gleb?" Adopting once more Cain's device, he craftily sent messages to Gleb to the effect that he should come quickly, because his father was very ill and desired his presence. Gleb quickly mounted his horse, and set out with a small company, for he was obedient to his father. When he came to the Volga, his horse stumbled in a ditch on the plain, and injured his leg slightly. He arrived at Smolensk, and setting out thence at daybreak, embarked in a boat on the Smyadyn'.¹²² At this moment, Yaroslav received from Predslava the tidings of their father's death, and he sent word to Gleb that he should not set out, because his father (136) was dead and his brother had been murdered by Svyatopolk. Upon receiving these tidings, Gleb burst into tears, and mourned for his father, but still more deeply for his brother. He wept and prayed with the lament, "Woe is me, oh Lord! It were better for me to die with my brother than to live on in this world. Oh my brother, had I but seen thy angelic countenance, I should have died with thee. Why am I now left alone? Where are thy words that thou didst say to me, my brother? No longer do I hear thy sweet counsel. If thou hast received encouragement from God, pray for me that I may endure the same passion. For it were better for me to dwell with thee than in this deceitful world."

While he was thus praying amid his tears, there suddenly arrived those sent by Svyatopolk for Gleb's destruction. These emissaries seized Gleb's boat, and drew their weapons. The servants of Gleb were terrified, and the impious messenger, Goryaser, gave orders that they should slay Gleb with despatch. Then Gleb's cook, Torchin by name, seized a knife, and stabbed Gleb. He was offered up as a sacrifice to God like an innocent lamb, a glorious offering amid the perfume of incense, and he received the crown of glory. Entering the heavenly mansions, he beheld his long-desired brother, and rejoiced with him in the joy ineffable which they had attained through their brotherly love.

"How good and fair it is for brethren to live together!" (*Ps.*, cxxxiii, 1). But the impious ones returned again (137) even as David said, "Let the sinners return to hell" (*Ps.*, ix, 17). When they returned to Svyato-

polk, they reported that his command had been executed. On hearing these tidings, he was puffed up with pride, since he knew not the words of David, "Why art thou proud of thy evil-doing, oh mighty one? Thy tongue hath considered lawlessness all the day long" (*Ps.*, lii, 1).

After Gleb had been slain, his body was thrown upon the shore between two tree-trunks, but afterward they took him and carried him away, to bury him beside his brother Boris beside the Church of St. Basil.

United thus in body and still more in soul, ye dwell with the Lord and King of all, in eternal joy, ineffable light, bestowing salutary gifts upon the land of Rus'. Ye give healing to pilgrims from other lands who draw near with faith, making the lame to walk, giving sight to the blind, to the sick health, to captives freedom, to prisoners liberty, to the sorrowful consolation, and to the oppressed relief. Ye are the protectors of the land of Rus', shining forever like beacons and praying to the Lord in behalf of your countrymen. Therefore must we worthily magnify these martyrs in Christ, praying fervently to them and saying: "Rejoice, martyrs in Christ from the land of Rus', who give healing in them who draw near to you in faith and love. Rejoice, dwellers in heaven. In the body ye were angels, servants in the same thought, comrades in the same image, of one heart with the saints. To all that suffer (138) ye give relief. Rejoice, Boris and Gleb, wise in God. Like streams ye spring from the founts of life-giving water which flow for the redemption of the righteous. Rejoice, ye who have trampled the serpent of evil beneath your feet. Ye have appeared amid bright rays, enlightening like beacons the whole land of Rus'. Appearing in faith immutable, ye have ever driven away darkness. Rejoice, ye who have won an unslumbering eye, ye blessed ones who have received in your hearts the zeal to fulfill God's holy commandments. Rejoice, brethren united in the realms of golden light, in the heavenly abodes, in glory unfading, which ye through your merits have attained. Rejoice, ye who are brightly irradiate with the luminance of God, and travel throughout the world expelling devils and healing diseases. Like beacons supernal and zealous guardians, ye dwell with God, illumined forever with light divine, and in your courageous martyrdom ye enlighten the souls of the faithful. The light-bringing heavenly love has exalted you, wherefore ye have inherited all fair things in the heavenly life: glory, celestial sustenance, the light of wisdom, and beauteous joys. Rejoice, ye who refresh our hearts, driving out pain and sickness and curing evil passions. Ye glorious ones, with the sacred drops of your blood ye have dyed a robe of purple which ye wear in beauty, and reign for-

evermore with Christ, interceding with him for his new Christian nation and for your fellows, for our land is hallowed (139) by your blood. By virtue of your relics deposited in the church, ye illumine it with the Holy Spirit, for there in heavenly bliss, as martyrs among the army of martyrs, ye intercede for your nation. Rejoice, bright day-springs, our Christ-loving martyrs and intercessors! Subject the pagans to our Princes, beseeching our Lord God that they may live in concord and in health, freed from intestine war and the crafts of the devil. Help us therefore who sing and recite your sacred praise forever unto our life's end."¹²³

Now the impious and evil Svyatopolk killed Svyatoslav in the Hungarian mountains, after causing him to be pursued as he fled into Hungary. Then he began to reflect how he would kill all his brethren, and rule alone in Rus'. He schemed thus in his pride, being ignorant that God attributes of power according to his divine plans. For the Most High God appoints emperor and prince, and confers authority according to his desires. Wherever a nation is justified before God, he there appoints a just emperor or prince, who loves law and righteousness, and sets up a governor and a judge to render judgment. For if the princes are righteous in the land, many sins are remitted. But if they are evil and deceitful, then God visits yet greater evil (140) upon that country, for the prince is its head. Thus Isaiah said, "They have sinned from head to foot" (*Is.*, i, 6), meaning from the king down to the common people. "Woe unto that city in which the prince is young, loving to drink wine amid music and in the company of young councillors. God bestoweth such princes in requital for sin, and taketh away from Jerusalem the strong, the giant, the valiant man, the judge, the prophet, the moderate elder, the able councillor, the cunning artificer, the learned, the wise, and the obedient. I shall appoint a youth to be their prince, and a brawler to be their ruler" (*Is.*, iii, 1-4).

The impious Svyatopolk thus began his reign in Kiev. Assembling the people, he began to distribute mantles to some and furs to others, and thus dissipated a large sum.

While Yaroslav had not yet heard of his father's death, he had many Varangians under his command, and they offered violence to the inhabitants of Novgorod and to their wives. The men of Novgorod then rose and killed the Varangians in their market place.¹²⁴ Yaroslav was angry, and departing to Rakom,¹²⁵ he took up his abode in the castle. Then he sent messengers to Novgorod with the comment that the death of his retainers was beyond remedy, but at the same time he summoned before him the chief men of the city who had massacred

the Varangians, and craftily killed them. The same night news came from Kiev sent by his sister Predslava to the effect that his father was dead, that Svyatopolk had settled in Kiev after killing Boris, and was now endeavoring to compass the death of Gleb, (141) and she warned Yaroslav to be exceedingly on his guard against Svyatopolk. When Yaroslav heard these tidings, he grieved for his father and his retainers.

On the morrow, he collected the remnant of the men of Novgorod and regretfully lamented, "Alas for my beloved retainers, whom I yesterday caused to be killed! You would indeed be useful in the present crisis." He wiped away his tears, and informed his subjects in the assembly that his father was dead, and that Svyatopolk had settled in Kiev after killing his brethren. Then the men of Novgorod said, "We can still fight for you, oh Prince, even though our brethren are slain." So Yaroslav collected one thousand Varangians and forty thousand other soldiers, and marched against Svyatopolk.¹²⁶ He called on God as his witness and protested, "It was not I who began to kill our brethren, but Svyatopolk himself. May God be the avenger of the blood of my brothers inasmuch as Svyatopolk, despite their innocence, has shed the just blood of Boris and Gleb. Perhaps he will even visit the same fate upon me. But judge me, oh Lord, according to the right, that the malice of the sinful may end." So he marched against Svyatopolk. When Svyatopolk learned that Yaroslav was on his way, he prepared an innumerable army of Russes and Pechenegs,¹²⁷ and marched out toward Lyubech¹²⁸ on one side of the Dnieper, while Yaroslav was on the opposite bank.

6524 (1016). The beginning of the principate of Yaroslav at Kiev. Yaroslav arrived and the brothers stood over against each other on both banks on the Dnieper, but neither party dared attack. They remained thus face to face for three months. Then Svyatopolk's general (142) rode out along the shore and scoffed at the men of Novgorod, shouting, "Why did you come hither with this crooked-shanks, you carpenters?¹²⁹ We shall put you to work on our houses." When the men of Novgorod heard this taunt, they declared to Yaroslav, "Tomorrow we will cross over to them, and whoever will not go with us we will kill." Now it was already beginning to freeze. Svyatopolk was stationed between two lakes,¹³⁰ and caroused with his fellows the whole night through. Yaroslav on the morrow marshaled his troops, and crossed over toward dawn. His forces disembarked on the shore, and pushed the boats out from the bank. The two armies advanced to the attack, and met upon the field. The carnage was terrible. Because of the lake, the Pechenegs could bring no aid, and Yaroslav's troops drove Svyato-

polk with his followers toward it. When the latter went out upon the ice, it broke under them, and Yaroslav began to win the upper hand. Svyatopolk then fled among the Lyakhs, while Yaroslav established himself in Kiev upon the throne of his father and his grandfather.¹³¹ Yaroslav had then been in Novgorod twenty-eight years.¹³²

6525 (1017). Yaroslav took up his abode in Kiev, and in the same year the churches were burned.¹³³

6526 (1018). Boleslav attacked Yaroslav with Svyatopolk and his Lyakhs.¹³⁴ (143) After collecting Russes, Varangians, and Slavs, Yaroslav marched forth against Boleslav and Svyatopolk, and upon arriving at Volyn', they camped on either side of the river Bug. Now Yaroslav had with him his guardian and general, Budÿ by name. He scoffed at Boleslav, remarking, "We shall pierce your fat belly with a pike." For Boleslav was big and heavy, so that he could scarcely sit a horse, but he was crafty. So Boleslav said to his retainers, "If you do not avenge this insult, I will perish alone," and leaping upon his horse, he rode into the river and his retainers after him, while Yaroslav had no time to align his troops, so that Boleslav vanquished him.¹³⁵

Then Yaroslav fled with four men to Novgorod, and Boleslav entered Kiev in company with Svyatopolk.¹³⁶ Boleslav ordered that his force should be dispersed to forage throughout the cities, and so it was done. When Yaroslav arrived at Novgorod in his flight, he planned to escape overseas, but the lieutenant Constantine, son of Dobrÿnya, together with the men of Novgorod, destroyed his boat, protesting that they wished to fight once more against Boleslav and Svyatopolk. They set out to gather funds at the rate of four *kunÿ* per commoner, ten *grivnÿ* from each elder, and eighteen *grivnÿ* from each boyar.¹³⁷

With these funds they recruited Varangians whom they imported, and thus collected for Yaroslav a large army.¹³⁸

While Boleslav was settled in Kiev, the impious Svyatopolk ordered that any Lyakhs found in the city should be killed, (144) and so the Lyakhs were slain. Then Boleslav fled from Kiev,¹³⁹ taking with him the property and the boyars of Yaroslav, as well as the latter's two sisters, and made Anastasius¹⁴⁰ steward of the property, for the latter had won his confidence by his flattery. He took with him a large company, and having appropriated to himself the cities of Cherven,¹⁴¹ he returned to his native land. Svyatopolk thus reigned alone in Kiev, but Yaroslav attacked him again, and Svyatopolk fled among the Pechenegs.

6527 (1019). Svyatopolk advanced with a large force of Pecheneg supporters, and Yaroslav collected a multitude of soldiery, and went

forth against him to the Al'ta River.¹⁴² Yaroslav halted at the site where Boris had been slain and, lifting up his hands to heaven, exclaimed, "The blood of my brother cries aloud to thee, oh Lord. Avenge the blood of this just man. Visit upon this criminal the sorrow and terror that thou didst inflict upon Cain to avenge the blood of Abel." Then he prayed and said, "My brethren, although ye be absent in the body, yet help me with your prayer against this presumptuous assassin." When he had thus spoken, the two armies attacked, and the plain of the Al'ta was covered with the multitudinous soldiery of both forces. It was then Friday. As the sun rose, they met in battle, and the carnage was terrible, such as had never before occurred in Rus'. The soldiers fought hand to hand and slaughtered each other. Three times they clashed, so that the blood flowed in the valley. Toward evening Yaroslav conquered, and Svyatopolk fled.

As he fled (145) a devil came upon him and his bones were softened, so that he could not ride, but was carried in a litter. His retainers bore him to Brest¹⁴³ in his flight, but he still cried out, "Fly with me, they are pursuing us!" His servants sent back to see who was pursuing them, and there was actually no one following their trail, but still they fled on with him. He lay in a faint, and when he recovered, he still cried out, "Run, they are pursuing us!" He could not endure to stay in one place, but fled through the land of the Lyakhs, pursued by the wrath of God. Upon reaching the wilderness between Poland and Bohemia, he died a miserable death.¹⁴⁴ When judgment thus rightly fell upon him as a sinner, torments seized this impious prince after his departure from this world. That is clearly proved by the fatal wound which was dealt him and which mercilessly drove him to his end; and since his death he abides in bonds and in torment everlasting. His tomb is in the wilderness even to this day, and an evil odor issues forth from it.

This retribution was exhibited by God as an admonition to the princes of Rus' so that, if they do likewise after hearing of this dread example, they shall incur the same punishment, yet even more severe because they, though familiar with this story, shall commit the same evil crime. For Cain received seven punishments for killing Abel, and Lamech seventy, because Cain did not know the penalty to be exacted by God, while Lamech knew of the chastisement visited upon his ancestor, yet still committed murder notwithstanding. For Lamech said (146) to his wives, "I have killed a man to my harm, and a youth to my destruction. Wherefore," said he, "seventy punishments are upon me, because I acted knowingly" (*Gen.*, iv, 23). Lamech killed

two brothers of Enoch, and took their wives. Likewise Svyatopolk was a new Abimelech, who was born in adultery, and who killed his brothers, the sons of Gideon. Thus Yaroslav settled in Kiev, together with his followers, and wiped away the sweat of his labors now that victory was won after a hard struggle.

6528 (1020). A son was born to Yaroslav, and he called his name Vladimir.

6529 (1021). Bryachislav, son of Izyaslav, grandson of Vladimir, came and captured Novgorod, and having taken the people of Novgorod and their property, he returned to Polotsk.¹⁴⁵ When he arrived at the Sudomir' River,¹⁴⁶ Yaroslav came thither from Kiev after a seven days' march. He conquered Bryachislav, and returned the people of Novgorod to their city, while Bryachislav fled to Polotsk.

6530 (1022). Yaroslav went to Brest. At this time Mstislav, who was in Tmutorakan', attacked the Kasogians. When Rededya, Prince of the Kasogians, heard the report, he went forth against him, and as both armies stood face to face, Rededya said to Mstislav, "Why do we destroy our forces by mutual warfare? Let us rather fight (147) in single combat ourselves. If you win, you shall receive my property, my wife, and my children, and my land. But if I win, I shall take all your possessions." Then Mstislav assented to his proposal. Rededya thus suggested that they should wrestle instead of fighting with weapons. They straightway began to struggle violently, and when they had wrestled for some time, Mstislav began to tire, for Rededya was large and strong. Then Mstislav exclaimed, "Oh Virgin Mother of God, help me! If I conquer this man, I will build a church in thy name." Having spoken thus, he threw the Kasogian to the ground, then drew his knife and stabbed Rededya. He then penetrated into his territory, seized all his property, his wife, and his children, and imposed tribute upon the Kasogians. When he returned to Tmutorakan', he then founded a church dedicated to the Holy Virgin and built it, as it stands in Tmutorakan' even to the present day.¹⁴⁷

6531 (1023). Mstislav marched against Yaroslav with a force of Khazars and Kasogians.¹⁴⁸

6532 (1024). While Yaroslav was at Novgorod, Mstislav arrived before Kiev from Tmutorakan', but the inhabitants of Kiev would not admit him. He thus departed thence and established himself upon the throne of Chernigov,¹⁴⁹ while Yaroslav was at Novgorod. In this year, magicians appeared in Suzdal',¹⁵⁰ and killed old people by satanic inspiration and devil worship, saying that they would spoil the harvest.¹⁵¹ There was great confusion and famine throughout all that

country. The whole population went along the Volga to the Bulgars¹⁵² from whom they bought grain and thus sustained themselves.

When Yaroslav heard of the magicians, (148) he went to Suzdal'. He there seized upon the magicians and dispersed them, but punished some, saying, "In proportion to its sin, God inflicts upon every land hunger, pest, drought, or some other chastisement, and man has no understanding thereof." Then Yaroslav returned and came again to Novgorod, whence he sent overseas after Varangians. Thus Haakon came over with his Varangian followers. Now this Haakon was blind and he had a robe all woven with gold.¹⁵³ He allied himself with Yaroslav, and with his support Yaroslav marched against Mstislav who, hearing the news of their coming, proceeded to meet them at Listven'.¹⁵⁴

At eventide Mstislav marshalled his troops, placing the Severians in the centre opposite the Varangians, while he himself and his personal retainers took up their position on the flanks. When night fell, there was darkness with lightning, thunder, and rain. Mstislav thus ordered his followers to attack. Mstislav and Yaroslav then attacked each other, and the Severians in the centre met the Varangians, who exhausted themselves in opposing them. Then Mstislav came up with his retainers to attack the Varangians, and the combat was violent. As the lightnings flashed, the weapons gleamed and the thunder roared, and the fight was violent and fearsome. Now when Yaroslav saw that he was overpowered, he fled from the field with Haakon, the Varangian prince, who lost his gold-woven robe in his flight. Yaroslav arrived safely at Novgorod, but Haakon departed beyond the sea. Mstislav, however, when on the morrow at dawn he beheld lying dead his own Severians (149) and the Varangians of Yaroslav whom his men had slain, exclaimed in exultation, "Who does not rejoice at this spectacle? Here lies a Severian, here a Varangian, and my retainers are unharmed." Then Mstislav proposed to Yaroslav that the latter, as the eldest brother, should remain in Kiev, while the Chernigov district should belong to Mstislav. But Yaroslav did not dare to return to Kiev until they were properly reconciled. So Mstislav settled in Chernigov, and Yaroslav in Novgorod, though Kiev was occupied by subjects of Yaroslav. In this year was born to Yaroslav a second son, and he was christened Izyaslav.

6534 (1026). Yaroslav recruited many soldiers and arrived at Kiev, where he made peace with his brother Mstislav near Gorodets.¹⁵⁵ They divided Rus' according to the course of the Dnieper. Yaroslav took the Kiev side, and Mstislav the other. They thus began to live in peace

and fraternal amity. Strife and tumult ceased, and there was a great calm in the land.

6535 (1027). A third son was born to Yaroslav, and he named him Svyatoslav.

6536 (1028). A portent visible to the whole country appeared in the heavens.

6537 (1029). Peace prevailed.

6538 (1030). Yaroslav captured Bel'z.¹⁵⁶ To Yaroslav was born his fourth son, and he named him Vsevolod. In this year, Yaroslav attacked the Chuds and conquered them. He thus founded the city of Yur'ev.¹⁵⁷ At this same time, Boleslav the Great died in Poland, and there was a revolt in the Polish country. (150) The people arose and killed the bishops, the priests, and the boyars, and there was rebellion among them.¹⁵⁸

6539 (1031). Yaroslav and Mstislav collected a large force and marched into Poland. They recaptured the cities of Cherven, and ravaged the Polish countryside. They also captured many Poles and distributed them as colonists in various districts. Yaroslav located his captives along the Ros',¹⁵⁹ where they live to this day.

6540 (1032). Yaroslav began to found towns along the Ros'.

6541 (1033). Eustathius, son of Mstislav, passed away.

6542-6544 (1034-1036). While on a hunting expedition, Mstislav fell sick and died, and was laid in the Church of the Redeemer, which he himself had founded.¹⁶⁰ In his time, it was built to a point higher than a man on horseback could reach with his hand. Mstislav was corpulent and red-faced, with large eyes, bold in battle, merciful, and a great lover of his retainers, begrudging them neither treasure nor food nor drink.

Thereafter Yaroslav assumed the entire sovereignty, and was the sole ruler in the land of Rus'. Yaroslav went to Novgorod, where he set up his son Vladimir as prince,¹⁶¹ and appointed Zhidyata bishop.¹⁶² At this time, a son was born to Yaroslav, and he named him Vyacheslav. While Yaroslav was still at Novgorod, news came (151) to him that the Pechenegs were besieging Kiev. He then collected a large army of Varangians and Slavs, returned to Kiev, and entered his city. The Pechenegs were innumerable. Yaroslav made a sally from the city and marshalled his forces, placing the Varangians in the centre, the men of Kiev on the right flank, and the men of Novgorod on the left. When they had taken position before the city, the Pechenegs advanced, and they met on the spot where the metropolitan church of St. Sophia now stands. At that time, as a matter of fact, there were fields outside

the city.¹⁶³ The combat was fierce, but toward evening Yaroslav with difficulty won the upper hand. The Pechenegs fled in various directions, but as they did not know in what quarter to flee, they were drowned, some in the Setoml',¹⁶⁴ some in other streams, while the remnant of them disappeared from that day to this. In the same year, Yaroslav imprisoned his brother Sudislav in Pskov because he had been slanderously accused.¹⁶⁵

6545 (1037). Yaroslav built the great citadel at Kiev, near which stands the Golden Gate.¹⁶⁶ He founded also the metropolitan Church of St. Sophia,¹⁶⁷ the Church of the Annunciation over the Golden Gate, and also the Monastery of St. George and the convent of St. Irene.¹⁶⁸ During his reign, the Christian faith was fruitful and multiplied, while the number of monks increased, and new monasteries came into being. Yaroslav loved religious establishments and was devoted to priests, especially to monks. He applied himself to books, and read them continually (152) day and night. He assembled many scribes, and translated from Greek into Slavic. He wrote and collected many books through which true believers are instructed and enjoy religious education. For as one man plows the land, and another sows, and still others reap and eat food in abundance, so did this prince. His father Vladimir plowed and harrowed the soil when he enlightened Rus' through baptism, while this prince sowed the hearts of the faithful with the written word, and we in turn reap the harvest by receiving the teaching of books. For great is the profit from book-learning.

Through the medium of books, we are shown and taught the way of repentance, for we gain wisdom and continence from the written word. Books are like rivers that water the whole earth; they are the springs of wisdom. For books have an immeasurable depth; by them we are consoled in sorrow. They are the bridle of self-restraint. For great is wisdom. As Solomon said in its praise, "I (wisdom) have inculcated counsel; I have summoned reason and prudence. The fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom. Mine are counsel, wisdom, constancy, and strength. Through me kings rule, and the mighty decree justice. Through me are princes magnified and the oppressors possess the earth. I love them that love me, and they who seek me shall find grace" (*Prov.*, viii, 12, 13, 14-17). If you seek wisdom attentively in books, you will obtain great profit for your spirit. He who reads books (153) often converses with God or with holy men. If one possesses the words of the prophets, the teachings of the evangelists and the apostles, and the lives of the holy fathers, his soul will derive great profit therefrom. Thus Yaroslav, as we have said, was a lover

of books, and as he wrote many, he deposited them in the Church of St. Sophia which he himself had founded. He adorned it with gold and silver and churchly vessels, and in it the usual hymns are raised to God at the customary seasons. He founded other churches in the cities and districts, appointing priests and paying them out of his personal fortune. He bade them teach the people, since that is the duty which God has prescribed them, and to go often into the churches. Priests and Christian laymen thus increased in number. Yaroslav rejoiced to see the multitude of his churches and of his Christian subjects, but the devil was afflicted, since he was now conquered by this new Christian nation.

6546 (1038). Yaroslav attacked the Yatvingians.¹⁶⁹

6547 (1039). The Church of the Blessed Virgin which had been founded by Vladimir, Yaroslav's father, was consecrated¹⁷⁰ by the Metropolitan Theopemptos.¹⁷¹

6548 (1040). Yaroslav attacked Lithuania.¹⁷²

6549 (1041). Yaroslav attacked the Mazovians by boat.¹⁷³

6550 (1042). Vladimir, son of Yaroslav, attacked the people of Yam' and conquered them.¹⁷⁴ The horses of Vladimir's soldiery died; and they tore the skins off the horses while the latter were still breathing, (154) so violent was the plague from which the animals suffered.

6551 (1043). Yaroslav sent his son Vladimir to attack Greece,¹⁷⁵ and entrusted him with a large force. He assigned the command to Vyshata, father of Yan. Vladimir set out by ship, arrived at the Danube, and proceeded toward Tsar'grad. A great storm arose which broke up the ships of the Russes; the wind damaged even the Prince's vessel, and Ivan, son of Tvorimir, Yaroslav's general, took the Prince into his boat. The other soldiers of Vladimir to the number of six thousand were cast on shore, and desired to return to Rus', but none of the Prince's retainers went with them. Then Vyshata announced that he would accompany them, and disembarked from his vessel to join them, exclaiming, "If I survive, it will be with the soldiers, and if I perish, it will be with the Prince's retainers." They thus set out to return to Rus'. It now became known to the Greeks how the Russes had suffered from the storm, and the Emperor, who was called Monomakh, sent fourteen ships to pursue them. When Vladimir and his retainers perceived that the Greeks were pursuing them, he wheeled about, dispersed the Greek ships, and returned to Rus' on his ships. But the Greeks captured Vyshata, in company with those who had been cast on land, and brought them to Tsar'grad, where they blinded many of the captive Russes. After peace had prevailed for three years thereafter, Vyshata was sent back to Yaroslav in Rus'. At that same time

Yaroslav married his sister (155) to Kazimir,¹⁷⁶ and as a wedding gift Kazimir surrendered eight hundred captives whom Boleslav had taken when he overcame Yaroslav.

6552 (1044). The bodies of the two princes Yaropolk and Oleg, sons of Svyatoslav, after their remains were baptized, were laid in the Church of the Holy Virgin.¹⁷⁷

In the same year died Bryachislav,¹⁷⁸ son of Izyaslav, and father of Vseslav; and Vseslav his son succeeded to his throne. Him his mother bore by enchantment, for when his mother bore him, there was a caul over his head, and the magicians bade his mother bind this caul upon him, that he might carry it with him the rest of his life. Vseslav accordingly bears it to this day, and for this reason he is pitiless in bloodshed.¹⁷⁹

6553 (1045). Vladimir founded the Church of St. Sophia at Novgorod.¹⁸⁰

6554-6555 (1046-1047). Yaroslav attacked and conquered the Mazovians, killing their prince Moislav, and subjected them to Kazimir.¹⁸¹

6556-6558 (1048-1050). The Princess, wife of Yaroslav, died on February 10.¹⁸²

6559 (1051). Yaroslav, after assembling the bishops, appointed Hilarion Metropolitan of Rus' in St. Sophia.¹⁸³

Let us now relate why the Monastery of the Crypts bears this name.¹⁸⁴ Prince Yaroslav was fond of Berestovo and the Church of (156) the Holy Apostles there situated. He gathered a large company of priests, among whom was a presbyter named Hilarion, a virtuous man, learned and ascetic. Hilarion used often to walk from Berestovo toward the Dnieper to a certain hill, where the old Crypt Monastery now is, and made his orisons there, for there was a great forest on the spot. He dug a little catacomb two fathoms deep, and often went thither from Berestovo to chant the hours and offer his prayer to God in secret. Then God inspired the Prince to appoint him Metropolitan in St. Sophia; and the crypt remained as it was.

Not many days afterward, there was a certain man, a layman from the city of Lyubech,¹⁸⁵ in whose heart God had inspired the desire to go on pilgrimage. He made his way to Mt. Athos, beheld the monasteries there, and upon examining them and being charmed by the monastic life, he entered one of the local monasteries, and begged the prior to confer upon him the monastic habit. The latter complied with his request and made him a monk, calling him Antonius, and after he had admonished him and instructed him in his monastic obligations, he bade him return to Rus' accompanied by the blessing of the Holy

Mount, that many other monks might spring from his example. The prior blessed him and dismissed him, saying, "Go in peace." Antonius returned to Kiev, and reflected where he should live. He went about the monasteries and liked none of them, since God did not so will, and subsequently wandered about the hills and valleys seeking the place which God should show him. He finally came to the hill where Hilarion had dug the crypt, and liked this site, and rejoiced in it. He then lifted up his voice in prayer to God, saying amid his tears, "Oh Lord, strengthen me in this place, (157) and may there rest upon it the blessing of the Holy Mount and of the prior who tonsured me." Thus he took up his abode there, praying to God, eating dry bread every other day, drinking water moderately, and digging the crypt. He gave himself rest neither day nor night, but endured in his labors, in vigil, and in prayer. Afterward good men noticed his conduct, and supplied him according to his necessities. Thus he acquired distinction as the great Antonius, and those who drew near to him besought his blessing.

When the Great Prince Yaroslav died,¹⁸⁶ Izyaslav his son inherited his domain and settled in Kiev, while Antonius was celebrated throughout Rus'. Izyaslav observed his manner of life, and came with his retainers to request his blessing and prayers. The great Antonius was thus remarked and revered by everyone. Brothers joined him, and he welcomed and tonsured them. Brethren thus gathered about him to the number of twelve. They dug a great crypt and a church, and cells, which exist to this day in the crypt under the old monastery. When the brethren has thus assembled, Antonius said to them, "God has gathered you together, my brethren, and ye are under the blessing of the Holy Mount, through which the prior at the Holy Mount tonsured me and I have tonsured you also. May there be upon you first the blessing of God and second that of the Holy Mount." And he added this injunction: "Live apart by yourselves, and I shall appoint you a prior; for I prefer (158) to go alone to yonder hill, as I formerly was wont when I dwelt in solitude." So he appointed Barlaam as their prior, and he betook himself to the hill, where he dug a grotto, which is under the new monastery, and in which he ended his life, enduring in virtue, and for the space of forty years never issuing forth from the crypt in which his bones lie to the present day.

The brethren thus abode with their prior, and as the number of monks in the crypt increased, they considered the establishment of a monastery outside the original crypt. Thus the prior and the brethren

approached Antonius and said to him, "Father, the brethren have increased in numbers, and we can no longer find room in the crypt. If God and thy prayers so direct us, we might build a small church outside the crypt." Antonius then bade them so to do. They did reverence to him, and built a little chapel over the crypt and dedicated it to the Assumption of the Holy Virgin.

God continued to augment the number of the brotherhood through the intercession of the Holy Virgin, and the brethren took counsel with the prior as to constructing a monastery. The friars again visited Antonius, and said, "Father, our brethren increase in numbers, and we are desirous of building a monastery." Antonius rejoiced and replied, "Blessed be God for all things, and may the prayers of the Holy Virgin and of the fathers of the Holy Mount be with you." Having thus spoken, he sent one of the brotherhood to Prince Izyaslav with the message, "My Prince! Behold, God strengthens the brotherhood, but their abode is small; give us therefore the hill which (159) is above the crypt." When Izyaslav heard these words, he rejoiced, and sent his servant, and gave to them the hill. The prior and the brethren founded there a great church, and fenced in the monastery with a palisade. They constructed many cells, completed the church, and adorned it with eikons. Such was the origin of the Crypt Monastery, which was so named because the brethren first lived in the crypt. The Crypt Monastery thus issued from the benediction of the Holy Mount.

Now when the monastery was completed during the priorate of Barlaam, Izyaslav founded the Monastery of St. Demetrius,¹⁸⁷ and appointed Barlaam prior therein, since he intended, by virtue of his material wealth, to make it superior to the ancient monastery. Many monasteries have indeed been founded by emperors and nobles and magnates, but they are not such as those founded by tears, fasting, prayer, and vigil. Antonius had neither silver nor gold, but accomplished his purpose through tears and fasting, as I have recounted.

When Barlaam had departed to St. Demetrius', the brethren held a council, and then once more visited the ancient Antonius with the request that he should designate them a new prior. He inquired whom they desired. They replied that they desired only the one designated by God and by his own selection. Then he inquired of them, "Who among you is more obedient, more modest, and more mild than Theodosius? Let him be your prior." The brethren rejoiced, and made their reverence before the old man. Being twenty in number, they thus appointed Theodosius to be their prior.¹⁸⁸ When Theodosius took

over the monastery, he began to practise abstinence, fasting, and tearful prayer. (160) He undertook to assemble many monks, and thus gathered together brethren to the number of one hundred.

He also interested himself in searching out the monastic rules. There was in Kiev at the time a monk from the Studion Monastery named Michael, who had come from Greece with the Metropolitan George,¹⁸⁹ and Theodosius inquired of him concerning the practices of the Studion monks. He obtained their rule from him, copied it out, and established it in his monastery to govern the singing of monastic hymns, the making of reverences, the reading of the lessons, behaviour in church, the whole ritual, conduct at table, proper food for special days, and to regulate all else according to prescription. After obtaining all this information, Theodosius thus transmitted it to his monastery, and from the latter all others adopted the same institutions. Therefore the Crypt Monastery is honored as the oldest of all.

While Theodosius lived in the monastery, following a virtuous life and the monastic rule, and receiving everyone who presented himself, I, a poor and unworthy servant, came to him, and he accepted me in my seventeenth year. Hence I have set down and certified what year the monastery came into being, and why it is named the Crypt Monastery, but to Theodosius' life we shall recur later.¹⁹⁰

6560 (1052). Vladimir, Yaroslav's eldest son, died at Novgorod, and was buried in the Church of St. Sophia, which he himself had founded.¹⁹¹

6561 (1053). A son was born to Vsevolod by the Greek Princess, and he named him Vladimir.¹⁹²

(161) 6562 (1054). Yaroslav, Great Prince of Rus', passed away. While he was yet alive, he admonished his sons¹⁹³ with these words: "My sons, I am about to quit this world. Love one another, since ye are brothers by one father and mother. If ye abide in amity with one another, God will dwell among you, and will subject your enemies to you, and ye will live at peace. But if ye dwell in envy and dissension, quarreling with one another, then ye will perish yourselves and bring to ruin the land of your ancestors, which they won at the price of great effort. Wherefore remain rather at peace, brother heeding brother. The throne of Kiev I bequeath to my eldest son, your brother Izyaslav. Heed him as ye have heeded me, that he may take my place among you. To Svyatoslav I give Chernigov, to Vsevolod Pereyaslavl', to Igor' the city of Vladimir,¹⁹⁴ and to Vyacheslav Smolensk." Thus he divided the cities among them, commanding them not to violate one another's boundaries, not to despoil one another. He laid upon Izyaslav the in-

junction to aid the party wronged, in case one brother should attack another. Thus he admonished his sons to dwell in amity.¹⁰⁵

Being unwell, he came to Vyshgorod, and there fell seriously ill. Izyaslav at the moment was in Novgorod, Svyatoslav at Vladimir, and Vsevolod with his father, for he was beloved of his father before all his brethren, and Yaroslav kept him constantly (162) by his side. The end of Yaroslav's life drew near, and he gave up the ghost on the first Saturday after the feast of St. Theodore [February 19]. Vsevolod bore his father's body away, and laying it upon a sled, he brought it to Kiev, while priests sang the customary hymns, and the people mourned for him. When they had transported the body, they laid it in a marble sarcophagus in the Church of St. Sophia, and Vsevolod and all his subjects mourned him. All the years of his age were seventy-six.

Izyaslav then took up his abode in Kiev, with Svyatoslav in Chernigov, Vsevolod at Pereyaslavl', Igor' in Vladimir, and Vyacheslav at Smolensk. In this year, Vsevolod attacked the Torks during the winter near Voin' and conquered them.¹⁰⁶ In the same year, Bolush advanced with his Polovcians, but Vsevolod made peace with them, and they returned whence they had come.¹⁰⁷

6564-6565 (1056-1057). Vyacheslav, son of Yaroslav, died at Smolensk, and Igor' took up his abode in Smolensk, moving over from Vladimir.

6566 (1058). Izyaslav conquered the Galindians.¹⁰⁸

6567 (1059). Izyaslav, Svyatoslav, and Vsevolod liberated their uncle Sudislav from the prison where he had been confined for twenty-four years, and after they had obtained his oath of fealty, he took the monastic habit.¹⁰⁹

6568 (1060). Igor', son of Yaroslav, passed away. (163) In the same year, after collecting a numberless army, Izyaslav, Svyatoslav, and Vsevolod made an expedition by horse and ship against the Torks. When the Torks heard of their coming, they were afraid, and are fleeing even to this day. In their flight they perished, pursued by the hand of God, some of them from the cold, some by famine, and others by pestilence and God's judgment upon them. Thus God once more saved the Christians from the pagans.

6569 (1061). The Polovcians invaded Rus' to make war for the first time. On February 2, Vsevolod went forth against them. When they met in battle, the Polovcians defeated Vsevolod, but after the combat they retired. This was the first evil done by these pagan and godless foes. Their prince was Iskal.

6570-6571 (1062-1063). Sudislav, brother of Yaroslav, passed away,

and was buried in the Church of St. George.²⁰⁰ In this same year, the Volkhov at Novgorod flowed backward for five days. This was not a favorable portent, since Vseslav²⁰¹ burned the city four years later.

6572 (1064). Rostislav, son of Vladimir and grandson of Yaroslav, fled to 'Tmutorakan', and with him fled Porey and Vyshata, son of Ostromir, the general of Novgorod. Upon his arrival, he expelled Gleb from 'Tmutorakan' and occupied his principate himself.

In 6573 (1065) Svyatoslav then marched against Rostislav in 'Tmutorakan', so that the latter withdrew from the city, not because he feared Svyatoslav, but because he was reluctant to take up arms against his uncle. Svyatoslav, upon his entry (164) into 'Tmutorakan', reestablished his son Gleb upon the throne, and returned home. Rostislav returned, however, and expelled Gleb, who rejoined his father, while Rostislav remained in 'Tmutorakan'.²⁰²

In this year, Vseslav began hostilities. At the time, there was a portent in the west in the form of an exceedingly large star with bloody rays, which rose out of the west after sunset. It was visible for a week and appeared with no good presage. Much internal strife occurred thereafter, as well as many barbarian incursions into the land of Rus', for this star appeared as if it were made of blood, and therefore portended bloodshed.

At this time, a child was cast into the Setoml'. Some fishermen pulled it up in their net. We then gazed upon it till evening, when they cast it back into the water because it was malformed; indeed, it had its privates upon its face, and for reasons of modesty no further account need be given regarding it.²⁰³

Somewhat before this moment, the sun also suffered alteration, and instead of being bright, became rather like the moon.

Such signs portend no good, for we understand how, in ancient times at Jerusalem, in the reign of Antiochus, it suddenly occurred that during a period of forty days armed men appeared throughout the whole city clad in golden raiment and riding on horseback through the air. Squadrons of them even appeared brandishing their weapons. This apparition presaged the attack of Antiochus (165) upon Jerusalem. Later, during the reign of the Emperor Nero, a star like a spear in its shape shone over the same city of Jerusalem. This sign portended the attack of an army sent by the Romans. Again it happened likewise in the reign of the Emperor Justinian that a star emitting rays appeared in the west. Men called it the brilliant star, and it shone forth for twenty days. Subsequently a shower of stars fell from evening till dawn, so that all thought that the stars of heaven were falling, and again the

sun shone without light. This portent presaged rebellions and pestilences, and was fatal to mankind. The following portents similarly occurred during the reign of the Emperor Mauricius: a woman bore a child without eyes and without hands, and a fish-tail grew to his back; a six-legged dog was born; and in Thrace there were born two children, one with four legs, and the other with two heads. Later, during the reign of Constantine the Iconoclast, son of Leo, there was a shower of stars in the sky, and they were cast down upon the earth, so that eye-witnesses thought it was the end of the world. At the same time, the air also was violently perturbed. In Syria, a violent earthquake took place, and the earth split for a distance of three stadia. Strange to relate, a mule issued forth from the earth, speaking with a human voice and prophesying the incursion of the pagans, which actually took place, for the Saracens attacked Palestine. Thus portents in the sky, or in the stars, or in the sun, or such as are made known by birds or from some other source, are not favorable import. Such signs are, on the contrary, of evil significance, presaging the appearance of war, famine, or death.²⁰⁴

(166) 6574 (1066). When Rostislav was at Tmutorakan', receiving tribute from the Kasogians and from other regions, the Greeks became afraid of him and sent to him an officer with treacherous intent. When he came before Rostislav and won his confidence, the Prince did him great honor. Then on one occasion while Rostislav was drinking with his retinue, the envoy said, "Oh Prince, I would drink to your health," and Rostislav accepted the compliment. The Greek drank half the goblet, and then offered the other half to the Prince to drink after dipping his finger in the cup, for he had a deadly poison under his fingernail. He thus passed the drink to the Prince, having determined his death for the seventh day thereafter. When the Prince had drunk the draught, the envoy departed to Kherson, where he reported that upon that day Rostislav would die, as did in fact occur. The people of Kherson then slew this officer by stoning him. Rostislav was a man bold in war, fair of stature, and handsome of feature, and he was generous to the poor. His death occurred on February 3, and he was buried there in the Church of the Holy Virgin.²⁰⁵

6575 (1067). Vseslav, the son of Bryachislav of Polotsk, undertook a campaign and captured Novgorod. Izyaslav, Svyatoslav, and Vsevolod, the three sons of Yaroslav, though it was the dead of winter, collected a force and set forth against him. They arrived before Minsk, but the citizens barricaded themselves in the city. Then the brethren captured it, put the men to the sword, sold the women and children

into slavery, and proceeded to Nemiza.²⁰⁶ Vseslav came forward to meet them. The two forces thus collided at the Nemiza on March 3, (167) with heavy snow on the ground. They thus attacked, and the carnage was severe. The casualties were numerous, but Izyaslav, Svyatoslav, and Vsevolod won the day, while Vseslav sought safety in flight. On July 10 following, Izyaslav, Svyatoslav, and Vsevolod took oath as to their peaceful intentions and offered Vseslav safe-conduct if he would join them. He put his confidence in their sworn oath, and crossed the Dnieper by boat. Izyaslav preceded Vseslav into their tent, and contrary to their oath, the brethren thus took Vseslav captive on the Orsha,²⁰⁷ near Smolensk. Izyaslav then brought Vseslav to Kiev and there threw him and his two sons into prison.

6576 (1068). A multitude of those nomads known as the Polovcians attacked the land of Rus', and Izyaslav, Svyatoslav and Vsevolod went forth against them as far as the Al'ta.²⁰⁸ They joined battle in the dead of night, but since God had let loose the pagans upon us because of our transgressions, the Russian princes fled and the Polovcians were victorious.

God in his wrath causes foreigners to attack a nation, and then, when its inhabitants are thus crushed by the invaders, they remember God. Intestine strife is incited by the craft of the devil. For God wishes men not evil but good; while the devil takes his delight in cruel murder and bloodshed, and therefore incites quarrels, envy, domestic strife, and slander. When any nation has sinned, God punishes them by death or famine (168) or barbarian incursion, by drought or a plague of caterpillars or by other chastisements, until we repent of our sins and live according to God's commandment. For he says unto us through the mouth of his Prophet, "Turn unto me with all your hearts in fasting and lamentation" (*Joel*, ii, 12). If we thus act, we shall all be forgiven our sins. But we return to evil, and persist in wallowing like swine in the mire of iniquity. "I knew that thou art obdurate and thy neck is an iron sinew" (*Is.*, xlviii, 4). "Therefore I have withholden the rain from you. I caused it to rain upon one city, and caused it not to rain upon another city, and it has withered. I have smitten you with heat and various chastisements, but even so ye have not returned unto me. Therefore I have smitten your vineyards, your olive-groves, your fields, and your forests, saith the Lord, but I could not drive out your iniquities. I sent upon you divers diseases and painful deaths, and brought plague upon your cattle, but even so ye have not repented, but said, 'Let us be manful'" (*Amos*, iv, 7-10). "When will ye be sated with your iniquities? For ye have turned aside from my way,

saith the Lord, and have committed many transgressions. Therefore I will be a swift witness against my adversaries, against the adulterer and against those who swear falsely by my name, against those that deprive the hireling of his wages, who offer violence to the orphan and widow, and who incline justice to wrong. Why have ye not restrained yourself in your sins, but violated my laws and not (169) kept them? Turn unto me and I will return unto you, said the Lord. I will open upon you the sluices of heaven, and turn away from you my wrath, until all shall be yours in abundance, and your vineyards and your fields shall not fail. But ye have blasphemed against me, saying 'Vain is he who works for God!' " (*Mal.*, iii, 5-14). "They honor me with their lips, but their heart is far from me" (*Is.*, xxix, 13).

For this reason we do not receive what we ask, since the Lord has said, "It shall come to pass that when ye call upon me I shall not hear you, ye evil ones shall seek me and not find me" (*Prov.*, i, 29). Ye have not desired to walk in my path; therefore heaven is closed, or else opens only for a fell purpose, sending down hail instead of rain, or destroying the harvest with frost and tormenting the earth with drought because of our iniquities. But if we repent us of our sins, then he will grant to us as his children all our requests, and will water us with rain early and late, and our granaries shall be full of wheat. "Your vineyards and olive-groves shall abound, and I will restore to you the years which the locusts, the worms, and the caterpillars consumed, the great army that I sent among you," said the Lord Almighty (*Joel*, ii, 23-25). Having heard these words, let us apply ourselves to good, seek justice, and free the oppressed. Let us do penance, not returning evil for evil nor slander for slander, but let us rather bind ourselves with love to the Lord our God. (170) Let us wash away all our transgressions with fasting, with lamentation, and with tears, nor call ourselves Christians as long as we live like pagans.

Do we not live like pagans as long as we attach superstitious significance to meetings? For he turns back who meets a monk, a boar or a swine. Is that not pagan? It is part and parcel of the devil's teaching to retain such delusions. Other people attach special significance to sneezing, which is healthy for the head. By these and other similar customs the devil deceives us, and he alienated us from God by all manner of craft, through trumpets and clowns, through harps and pagan festivals. For we behold the playgrounds worn bare by the footsteps of a great multitude, who jostle each other while they make a spectacle of a thing invented by the devil.

The churches still stand; but when the hour of prayer is come, few

worshippers are found in the church, for this reason we shall suffer at the hand of God all sorts of chastisement and then incursion of our foes, and at the command of God we shall endure punishment for our sins.²⁰⁹

Let us return now to our subject. When Izyaslav, accompanied by Vsevolod, had fled to Kiev, while Svyatoslav had taken refuge in Chernigov, the men of Kiev who had escaped to their native city held an assembly on the market place and sent the following communication to the Prince:²¹⁰ "The Polovcians have spread over the country. Oh Prince, give us arms and horses, that we may offer them combat once more." (171) Izyaslav, however, paid no heed to this request. Then the people began to murmur against his general Constantine.²¹¹ From the place of assembly, they mounted the hill, but when they arrived before the house of Constantine, they could not find him. They then halted before the house of Bryachislav and proposed that they should go and liberate their friends from prison. They then separated into two parties: half of them went to the prison, and half over the bridge.²¹² The latter contingent arrived before the Prince's palace, and as Izyaslav was sitting with his retinue in his hall, the crowd standing below began to threaten him. As the prince and his retainers were watching the crowd from a small window, Tukÿ, the brother of Chudin, called to Izyaslav's attention that the people were aroused, and suggested that he should send men to guard Vseslav. While he was thus speaking, the other half of the crowd approached from the prison, which they had thrown open. The retainers, remarking that the situation had become serious, urged the Prince to send pursuers after Vseslav who should entice him to a window by a ruse and then slay him with a sword. Izyaslav, however, did not heed their advice. The mob then gave a shout and went off to Vseslav's prison. When Izyaslav beheld their action, he fled with Vsevolod from the palace. But on September 15, the people thus haled Vseslav from his dungeon, and set him up in the midst of the prince's palace. They then pillaged the palace, seizing a huge amount of gold and silver, furs, and marten-skins. Izyaslav made his escape to Poland.²¹³

While the Polovcians were ravaging throughout the land of Rus', Svyatoslav was meanwhile at Chernigov. (172) As soon as the pagans raided around Chernigov itself, Svyatoslav collected a small force and sallied out against them to Snovsk.²¹⁴ The Polovcians remarked the approaching troop and marshalled their forces for resistance. When Svyatoslav observed their numbers, he said to his followers, "Let us attack, for it is too late for us to seek succor elsewhere." They spurred

up their horses, and though the Polovcians had twelve thousand men, Svyatoslav won the day with his force of only three thousand. Some of the pagans were killed outright, while others were drowned in the Snov', and their prince was captured on November 1. Svyatoslav thus returned victorious to his city. Vseslav was meanwhile ruling in Kiev.

God thus revealed the power of the Cross, since Izyaslav violated his oath upon it when he took Vseslav prisoner. It was for that reason that God inspired the incursion of the pagans, and from this calamity the true Cross obviously delivered us. For, on the day of the Exaltation [September 14], Vseslav sighed, and uttered this prayer: "Oh true Cross, inasmuch as I have believed in thee, free me from this abyss!" God demonstrated the power of the Cross as an admonition to the land of Rus' that its people should not violate the true Cross after sealing their oaths by kissing it. If anyone sins against the Cross, he shall suffer not only punishment in this world but also everlasting chastisement in the next. For great is the power of the Cross. By the Cross are vanquished the powers of the devil. The Cross helps our princes in combat, and the faithful who are protected by the Cross conquer in battle the foes who oppose them. For the Cross speedily frees from danger those who invoke it with faith, (173) for devils fear nothing as much as the Cross. If a man be importuned by devils, a sign of the Cross on the face drives them away. Now Vseslav remained in Kiev for the space of seven months.²¹⁵

6577 (1069). Reinforced by Boleslav, Izyaslav marched to attack Vseslav, who went forth to meet them, and arrived at Belgorod.²¹⁶ But during the night, he hid himself from the men of Kiev, and fled from Belgorod to Polotsk. When the men of Kiev saw on the morrow that their prince had fled, they returned to Kiev, and after calling an assembly, they sent messages to Svyatoslav and Vsevolod saying, "We did wrong in expelling our Prince, and now he leads the Poles against us. Return to your father's city. If you refuse to return, then we have no alternative but to burn our city and depart to Greece."²¹⁷ Svyatoslav replied, "We shall communicate with our brother. If he marches upon you with the Poles to destroy you, we shall fight against him, and not allow him to destroy our father's city. If his intentions are peaceful, then he shall approach with a small troop." Then the people of Kiev were pacified.

Svyatoslav and Vsevolod then sent messengers to Izyaslav, announcing that Vseslav had fled, and requesting him accordingly not to lead the Poles in attack upon Kiev, because no one was really opposing him. They also let it be understood that if he intended to nurse his

wrath and destroy the city, they would be properly concerned for the ancestral capital. When Izyaslav received these tidings, he left the Poles and came forward, accompanied only by Boleslav himself and a small Polish escort. He sent his son Mstislav ahead of him into Kiev, and upon the latter's arrival, he slew those who (174) had freed Vseslav, to the number of seventy, blinded others, and executed without any investigation others who were entirely innocent.²¹⁸ When Izyaslav arrived at the city, the inhabitants went forth to welcome him, and the men of Kiev received him as their Prince. Izyaslav thus resumed his throne on May 2. He scattered the Poles to forage, and then had them secretly killed. Boleslav then returned to his native country.²¹⁹ Izyaslav transferred the market place to the hill,²²⁰ and drove Vseslav out of Polotsk, where he set up his own son Mstislav. But the latter soon died, and Izyaslav enthroned in his stead his brother Svyatopolk, since Vseslav had fled.²²¹

6578 (1070). A son was born to Vsevolod, and he named him Rostislav. In this year was founded the Church of St. Michael in Vsevolod's monastery.²²²

6579 (1071). The Polovcians raided about Rastovets and Neyatin.²²³ In this year, Vseslav expelled Svyatopolk from Polotsk. In the same year, Yaropolk defeated Vseslav near Golotichesk.²²⁴

At this time, a magician appeared inspired by the devil. He came to Kiev and informed the inhabitants that after the lapse of five years the Dnieper would flow backward, and that the various countries would change their locations, so that Greece would be where Rus' was, and Rus' where Greece was, and that other lands would be similarly dislocated. The ignorant believed him, but the faithful ridiculed him and told him that the devil was only deluding him to his ruin. This was (175) actually the case, for in the course of one night, he disappeared altogether. For the devils, after once encouraging a man, lead him to an evil fate, then laugh him to scorn, and cast him into the fatal abyss after they have inspired his words. In this connection we may discuss infernal incitation and its effects.

While there was famine on one occasion in the district of Rostov, two magicians appeared from Yaroslavl' and said they knew who interfered with the food supply. Then they went along the Volga, and where they came to a trading-post, they designated the handsomest women, saying that one affected the grain, another the honey, another the fish, and another the furs. The inhabitants brought into their presence their sisters, their mothers, and their wives, and the magicians in their delusion stabbed them in the back and drew out from their

bodies grain or fish. They thus killed many women and appropriated their property. Then they arrived at Beloozero, and about three hundred men accompanied them. At that moment it happened that Yan, son of Vyshata,²²⁵ arrived in that neighborhood to collect tribute in behalf of Svyatoslav. The people of Beloozero recounted to him how two magicians had caused the death of many women along the Volga and the Sheksna and had now arrived in their district. Yan inquired whose subjects they were, and upon learning that they belonged to his Prince, he directed their followers to surrender the magicians to him, since they were subjects of his own Prince. When they refused to obey his command, Yan wanted to go unarmed in search of the magicians, but his companions (176) warned him against such action, urging that the magicians might attack him. Yan thus bade his followers to arm themselves; there were twelve of them with him, and they took their way through the forest in pursuit of the magicians. The latter arranged their forces to offer resistance, and when Yan advanced with his battle-axe, three of their number approached Yan and said to him, "You advance to certain death; go no further." But Yan gave the order to strike them down, and then moved upon the rest. They gathered together to attack Yan, and one of them struck at him with his axe, but Yan turned the axe and struck him with the butt. Then he bade his followers cut them down, but the enemy fled into the forest after killing Yan's priest. Yan returned to the town and the people of Beloozero, and announced to them that if they did not surrender those magicians to him, he would remain among them for a year.

The people of Beloozero then went forth and captured the magicians, whom they brought into Yan's presence. He asked them why they had caused the death of so many persons. They replied, "Because they prevent plenty, and if we remove them, abundance will return. If you so desire, we shall extract from their bodies grain or fish or any other object in your presence." Yan declared, "Verily that is a lie. God made man out of earth; he is composed of bones and has veins for his blood. There is nothing else in him. He knows nothing, and it is God alone who possesses knowledge." The magicians then asserted that they knew how man was made. When Yan asked them how, they replied, "God washed himself in the bath, and after perspiring, (177) dried himself with straw and threw it out of heaven upon the earth. Then Satan quarreled with God as to which of them should create man out of it. But the devil made man, and God set a soul in him. As a result, whenever a man dies, his body goes to the earth and his soul to God." Yan then made answer, "It is indeed the devil who

has put you to this mischief. In what god do you believe?" They answered, "In Antichrist." He then inquired of them where their god had his abode and they replied that he dwelt in the abyss.

Then Yan asked, "What sort of god is that which dwells in the abyss? That is a devil. God dwells in heaven, sitting upon his throne, glorified by the angels who stand before him in fear and dare not look upon him. He whom you call Antichrist was cast out from the number of these angels and expelled from heaven for his presumption. He dwells indeed in the abyss, as you say, and there abides until God shall come from heaven to seize this Antichrist, and bind him with bonds, and cast him out, when he shall have taken him captive with his minions and those who believe in him. As for you, you shall endure torment both at my hands here and now, and also in the life after death." The magicians retorted that their gods made known to them that Yan could do them no harm, but Yan answered that their gods were liars. They then asserted their right to stand before Svyatoslav, and that Yan had no jurisdiction over them. Yan, however, ordered that they should be beaten and have their beards torn out. When they had been thus beaten, and after their beards had been pulled out with pincers, Yan inquired of them what their gods were saying at the moment. They made answer, "That we should stand before (178) Svyatoslav." Yan then directed that they should be gagged and bound to the thwart. Thereupon he sent them on before him by boat, and himself followed after. The party halted at the mouth of the Sheksna, and Yan said to the magicians, "What do your gods now make known to you?" They replied, "Our gods tell us that we shall not escape you alive." Yan remarked that the information supplied by their gods was entirely correct. They then urged that if he released them, it would bring him much advantage, but that if he destroyed them, he should suffer much trouble and evil. Yan retorted that if he let them go he would be more likely to be punished by God.

Then Yan said to the boatmen, "Has any relative of any one of you been killed by these men?" One of them answered that his mother had thus been killed, while another mentioned his sister and another his relatives. So Yan ordered them to avenge their kinsfolk. They then seized and killed the magicians, whom they hanged upon an oak tree. They thus deservedly suffered punishment at God's hand. After Yan had departed homeward, a bear came up the next night, gnawed them and ate them up. Thus they perished through the instigation of the devil, prophesying to other people, but ignorant of their own destruction. For if they had really known the future, they would not

have come to that place where they were destined to be taken captive. After being thus captured, why did they declare that they would not die, even while Yan contemplated killing them? But of such nature is the instigation of devils; for devils do not perceive man's thought, though they often inspire thought in man without knowing his secrets. (179) God alone knows the mind of man, but devils know nothing, for they are weak and evil to look upon.

We shall now proceed to discuss their appearance and their magic. At about the same time, it happened that a certain man from Novgorod went among the Chuds, and approached a magician, desiring to have his fortune told. The latter, according to his custom, began to call devils into his abode. The man from Novgorod sat upon the threshold of that same house, while the magician lay there in a trance, and the devil took possession of him. The magician then arose, and said to the man from Novgorod, "The gods dare not approach, since you wear a symbol of which they are afraid." The Novgorodian then bethought him of the cross he wore, and went and laid it outside the house. The magician then resumed his calling of the devils, and they shook him, and made known why the stranger had come. Then the Novgorodian inquired of the magician why the devils were afraid of the cross they wore. The magician made answer, "That is the token of God in heaven, of whom our gods are afraid." Then the man of Novgorod asked who his gods were and where they dwelt. The magician replied, "In the abysses; they are black of visage, winged and tailed, and they mount up under heaven obedient to your gods. For your angels dwell in heaven, and if any of your people die, they are carried up to heaven. But if any of ours pass away, they are carried down into the abyss to our gods." And so it is; for sinners abide in hell in the expectation of eternal torment, (180) while the righteous associate with the angels in the heavenly abode.

Such is the power and the beauty and the weakness of demons! In this way they lead men astray, commanding them to recount visions, appearing to those who are imperfect in faith, and exhibiting themselves to some in sleep and to others in dreams. Thus magic is performed through infernal instigation. Particularly through the agency of woman are infernal enchantments brought to pass, for in the beginning the devil deceived woman, and she in turn deceived man. Thus even down to the present day women perform magic by black arts, poison, and other devilish deceits. Unbelievers are likewise led astray by demons.

Thus in ancient days, in the time of the Apostles, there lived Simon

Magus, who through his magic caused dogs to speak like man, and changed his own aspect, appearing sometimes old, sometimes young, and sometimes he even changed one man to the semblance of another, accomplishing this transfiguration by his magic art. Jannes and Jambres wrought marvels against Moses through enchantment, but eventually they had no power against him. Kunop also practiced devilish arts, such as walking upon the water; and he performed other prodigies, being misled by the devil to his own and others' destruction.²²⁶

A magician likewise appeared at Novgorod in the principate of Gleb. He harangued the people, and by representing himself as a god he deceived many of them; in fact, he humbugged almost the entire city. For he claimed to know all things, and he blasphemed against the Christian faith, announcing that he would walk across (181) the Volk-hov River in the presence of the public. There was finally an uprising in the city, and all believed in him so implicitly that they went so far as to desire to murder their bishop. But the Bishop took his cross, and clad himself in his vestments, and stood forth saying, "Whosoever has faith in the magician, let him follow him, but whoever is a loyal Christian, let him come to the Cross." So the people were divided into two factions, for Gleb and his retainers took their stand beside the bishop, while the common people all followed the magician. Thus there was a great strife between them.

Then Gleb hid an axe under his garments, approached the magician, and inquired of him whether he knew what was to happen on the morrow or might even occur before evening. The magician replied that he was omniscient. Then Gleb inquired whether he even knew what was about to occur that very day. The magician answered that he himself should perform great miracles. But Gleb drew forth the axe and smote him, so that he fell dead, and the people dispersed. Thus the man who had sold himself to the devil perished body and soul.

6580 (1072). The relics of the holy martyrs Boris and Gleb were transported to their final resting place.²²⁷ Izyaslav, Svyatoslav, and Vsevolod, the sons of Yaroslav, gathered together, and with them the Metropolitan George, Bishop Peter of Pereyaslavl', Bishop Michael of Yur'ev, Theodosius the Prior of the Crypt Monastery, Sophronius the Prior of St. Michael's, Germanus the Prior of St. Saviour's, Nicholas the Prior of Pereyaslavl', and all the other priors. They instituted a festival and celebrated it with splendor, and they laid the relics in the new church founded by Izyaslav, which is still standing. First of all, Izyaslav, Svyatoslav, and Vsevolod took the relics of Boris in a wooden

casket and carried it upon their shoulders, (182) while monks preceded them holding candles in their hands. After them came deacons with censers, and then priests, and following the latter the Bishops accompanied by the Metropolitan. Last came the bearers of the casket. They transported it into the new church, and when they opened the casket, the church was filled with sweetness and fragrance. When they perceived this miracle, they glorified God. Fear overcame the Metropolitan, for he had been uncertain in his faith concerning the relics; he therefore prostrated himself and begged for forgiveness. After kissing the relics of Boris, they placed them in a stone coffin. Then they took Gleb in a stone coffin and laid it upon a sled, which they pulled along by means of ropes attached to it. When they arrived at the church-door, the coffin stopped, and would not move further. Then they bade the people cry, "Kyrie eleison," and thus moved it through. The relics were thus laid away on May 2.²²⁸ When the liturgy had been sung, the brethren dined together, each with his boyars and in great affection. At this time Chudin governed Vyshgorod, and Lazarus was in charge of the church. The brethren then departed to their several districts.

6581 (1073). The devil stirred up strife among these brothers, the sons of Yaroslav. When disagreement thus ensued among them, Svyatoslav and Vsevolod united against Izyaslav. The latter left Kiev, but Svyatoslav and Vsevolod arrived there upon March 22 and established themselves on the throne at Berestovo, though they thus transgressed against their father's injunction. Svyatoslav was the instigator of his brother's expulsion, for he desired more power. He misled Vsevolod by asserting that Izyaslav was entering into an alliance with Vseslav for the purpose of attacking them saying, "If we do not forestall him, he will expel us." By this means he irritated Vsevolod against Izyaslav.²²⁹ Now Izyaslav took considerable treasure with him on his flight into Poland with the intention of recruiting supporters there. But the Poles robbed him of all his property, and expelled him from their boundaries.²³⁰ Svyatoslav thus ruled in Kiev after the expulsion of his brother, and thus broke the injunction of his father and of God. For it is a great sin to break the commandment of one's father. It was the sons of Ham who first attacked the land of Seth, but suffered the chastisement of God four hundred years later. From the race of Seth are sprung the Hebrews, who overcame the nation of the Canaanites, and seized the ancestral portion and the territory of the latter. Then Esau broke his father's command and suffered death; for it is not good to encroach upon another's possessions.²³¹

In this year the Church of the Crypts was founded by the Prior Theodosius and Bishop Michael, while George the Metropolitan was absent in Greece and Svyatoslav was reigning in Kiev.²³²

6582 (1074). Theodosius, the Prior of the Crypt Monastery, passed away. We shall therefore supply a brief account of his dormition. When the Lenten season approached, upon the eve of Quinquagesima Sunday, Theodosius was accustomed, after he had embraced the brethren according to his practice, to instruct them how to pass the Lenten period in prayer by night and by day, and how to guard against evil thoughts and the temptations of the devil. "For," said he, "demons incite in monks evil thoughts and desires, (184) and inflame their fancy so that their prayers are impaired. One must combat such thoughts when they come by using the sign of the Cross and by saying, "Lord Jesus Christ our God, have mercy on us, Amen!" With this end in view, we must practise abstinence from many foods, for evil desires develop out of excessive eating and immoderate drinking, and by the growth of such thoughts sin is caused. "By this means," said he, "oppose yourselves to the influence of the demons and their malice, guard against laziness and too much sleep, be zealous in churchly song, in the traditions of the fathers, and in the reading of the Scriptures. For it befits monks above all things to have upon their lips the Psalter of David, and thereby to expel the weaknesses caused by the devil. It befits all young persons to show toward their elders love, obedience, and attention, and it behooves all older persons to offer the younger brethren their love and admonition, and to be an example by their continence and vigil, their self-restraint and humility, to counsel and console the youthful, and to spend Lent in such pursuits."

"For," he added, "God has given us these forty days in which to purify our souls. This is a tithe given to God by the body. For the days of the year are three hundred and sixty-five, and giving to God each tenth day as a tithe makes a fast of forty days, during which the soul is cleansed and happily celebrates the Resurrection of the Lord as it rejoices in God. For the Lenten season purifies the heart (185) of man. In the beginning, fasting was first imposed upon Adam, so that he should not taste of one tree. Moses fasted forty days to prepare himself to receive the law upon Mt. Sinai, and then he beheld the glory of God. During a fast, Samuel's mother bore him. Through their fasting, the Ninevites averted the wrath of God. By his fasting, Daniel prepared himself for great visions. After his fast, Elijah was taken up to heaven to receive celestial sustenance. Through their fasting, the Three Children quenched the violence of the fire. And our Lord, by fasting forty

days, made known to us the Lenten season. By means of their fasting, the Apostles rooted out the teaching of the devil. By virtue of their fasts, our fathers appeared to the world as beacons that continue to shine after their decease. They exhibited great labors, and continence; for example, the great Antonius, Euthymius, Sabbas, and the other fathers. Let us imitate them, my brethren."

After thus instructing the brotherhood, he kissed them, calling each by name, and then left the monastery, taking with him but a few loaves of bread. He entered a crypt, closed the door behind him, and covered himself with dust. He spoke to no one, unless some object was needful to him, and in any case he conversed only on Saturday and on Sunday through a small window. Upon other days, he remained in fasting and in prayer, maintaining strict abstinence. He returned to the monastery on Friday on the eve of St. Lazarus' day. For on this day ends the forty days' fast, which opens on the first Monday after the week of St. Theodore and concludes on Friday, before the feast of St. Lazarus. Holy Week (186) is then observed as a fast on account of our Lord's passion.²³³ Theodosius thus returned according to his custom, embraced the brethren, and with them celebrated Palm Sunday.

When Easter Day came, he celebrated it brilliantly as usual, and then fell ill. When he was taken ill, and had been sick for five days, he bade them carry him in the evening down into the courtyard. The brethren laid him upon a sled and set him before the church.²³⁴ He then desired that the whole brotherhood should be summoned, so the brethren struck upon the bell, and all assembled together. Theodosius then said to them, "My brethren, my fathers, and my children! I now depart from you, for God made known to me, while I was in the crypt during the Lenten season, that I must now quit this world. Whom do you desire for your prior, that I may confer my blessing upon him?" They made answer, "You have been a father to us all. Whomsoever you yourself select shall be our father and our prior, and we shall obey him even as we obey you." Then our father Theodosius said, "Go apart from me and designate him whom you desire, except the two brothers Nicholas and Ignatius:²³⁵ but choose from the rest whomever you prefer, from the eldest down to the youngest."

They obeyed his behest, and upon withdrawing a short distance in the direction of the church, they took counsel together, and then sent two of the brethren back to Theodosius to beg him to designate the one chosen by God and his own holy prayer, and who should be agreeable to Theodosius himself. Theodosius then made answer. "If you desire to receive your prior from me, then I will appoint him not so much

from my own choice as by divine disposition," and he designated the presbyter James. (187) This nomination did not meet with the approval of the brotherhood, who objected that James had not taken orders in the monastery, since he had come thither from Letets²³⁶ with his brother Paul. They demanded rather Stephen the Cantor, who was then a pupil of Theodosius, and therefore said, "He has grown up under your hand and has served with you; appoint him as our prior."

Then Theodosius said, "By the commandment of God, I designated James, but you prefer that the appointment should coincide with your own wishes." He gave way to their desire, however, and appointed Stephen to be their prior, and blessed him, saying, "My son! I give over to you this monastery. Guard it with care, and maintain what I have ordained in its observances. Change not the traditions and the instructions of the monastery, but follow in all things the law and our monastic rule."

The brethren then raised him up, carried him to his cell, and laid him upon his bed. At the beginning of the sixth day, while he was seriously ill, Prince Svyatoslav came to visit him with his son Gleb. While the Prince was sitting beside him, Theodosius said, "I depart from this world and entrust this monastery to your guardianship in the event that some disorder arises in it. I confer the priorate upon Stephen; let him not be offended."²³⁷ The Prince embraced him, and after promising to care for the monastery, departed from him. When the seventh day was come, while Theodosius was steadily growing weaker, he summoned Stephen and the brotherhood, and spoke to them these words: "Upon my departure from this world, if I have found favor with God and he has accepted me, then this monastery, after my decease, will grow and prosper through his help. In that event, know that God has accepted me. But if, after my death, the monastery begins to lose in membership (188) and income, be assured that I shall not have found favor in the sight of God." When he had spoken thus, the brethren wept, saying, "Father, intercede with God for us, for we know that he will not scorn your labors." They thus sat out the night with him, and at the beginning of the eighth day, being the second Saturday after Easter, in the second hour of the day, he commended his soul into the hands of God, upon May 3, in the eleventh year of the indiction. The brethren thus mourned for him.

Theodosius had given command that he should be buried in the crypt where he had performed many good works. He had also directed that his body should be buried by night, and they followed his injunction in this respect. When evening was come, the brethren took

up his body and laid it in the crypt, after conducting it thither in all honor with hymns and candles to the glory of our God Jesus Christ.

While Stephen governed the monastery and the pious flock that Theodosius had gathered, these monks shone out like bright beacons throughout the land of Rus'. Some of them were constant in fasting, some in vigil, some in genuflexion, some in fasting every other day or every third day, others in living on bread and water only, still others in subsisting solely on boiled vegetables, and others only on raw food. They dwelt in love, while the young brethren obeyed the elder, not venturing to speak in their presence, but always comporting themselves obediently and with great consideration. Likewise the elder also gave proof of their love for their younger associates, admonished them, and consoled them like beloved sons. If any brother fell into some sinful way, they consoled him, and three or four of them shared the penance of one brother out of their great affection for him. Such was the brotherly love and such the continence in this monastery. If any brother quit the monastery, all the rest were deeply afflicted on his account, (189) sent in search of him, and recalled him to the monastery. All the brethren then appeared before the prior, and kneeling at his feet, they besought him in their brother's behalf, and received him again into the community with joy. Such was their charity, their continence, and their austerity. I shall mention a few eminent figures from their number.

The first is Damian the presbyter. He was so austere and temperate that he lived only on bread and water till his death. If anyone brought to the monastery a child that was ill and suffering from any disease, or if an adult beset by an illness came to the monastery in search of the great Theodosius, the prior commanded this Damian to offer prayer in behalf of the patient. When he had then prayed and applied an ointment, those who had thus come to him were healed. When he himself fell sick and lay in his weakness at the point of death, an angel came to him in the semblance of Theodosius, and promised him the kingdom of heaven as a reward for his labors. A little later Theodosius himself came with the brethren and when he sat down beside the sick man, Damian in his weakness looked up at the prior and said, "Forget not, father prior, what you have promised me." The great Theodosius understood forthwith that he had seen a vision, and said to him, "Brother Damian, that which I have promised shall be fulfilled." Damian then closed his eyes and commended his soul into the hands of God. The prior and his brethren then buried his body.

There was likewise another brother named Jeremy, who remem-

bered the conversion of Rus'. (190) God had conferred upon him the gift of prophecy, and if he beheld any brother lost in reflection, he reproved him in secret and adjured him to guard against the devil. If any brother was contemplating desertion from the monastery and Jeremy perceived his intent, he sought him out, reproved his thought, and consoled that brother. If he made any prophecy, whether good or evil, the ancient's word was fulfilled.

There was another ancient named Matthew, who also had the gift of second sight. When he was once standing in his place in the church, he lifted up his eyes, and on glancing at the brethren who stood singing on either side of him, he beheld a devil in the guise of a Pole, who carried in a fold of his garment certain flowers called *lepki*. As this devil circulated among the brethren, he took a flower from his bosom and threw it at one of them, and if the flower attached itself to any one of the brethren who were singing, that brother, after standing awhile and weakening in endurance, sought some pretext and left the church. He then went to his cell and fell asleep, and did not return to the church before the close of the service. If the demon cast the flower at some other brother and it did not attach itself to him, he stood firm during the singing until the matins were over, and then went forth to his cell. When the old man beheld this occurrence, he reported it to his brethren.

Upon another occasion, the ancient observed another curious occurrence. When the old man, according to his custom, had once celebrated matins before dawn, the brethren had all departed to their cells, while he followed them somewhat later out of the church. As he walked along alone, he sat down to rest (191) under the bell, since his cell was rather far from the church. Then he noticed a crowd of people issuing forth from the gate, and as he raised his eyes, he saw one person who rode upon a swine, while others ran after him. Then the old man inquired of them whither they were going. Then the demon who rode upon the swine replied, "After Michael Tol'bekovich." The old man straightway made the sign of the cross and went on to his cell. When day had dawned, the ancient reflected, and bade the porter go and inquire whither Michael was in his cell. The answer was returned that he had just jumped from the palisades after matins. The old man then recounted his vision to the prior and his brethren. During the lifetime of this venerable friar, Theodosius passed away, Stephen became prior, and then Stephen was succeeded by Nikon. Once while he was at matins, he raised his eyes to look upon Nikon the Prior, and saw an ass standing in the prior's place, so that he understood that the

prior had not yet arisen. The ancient likewise beheld many other visions, and died in this monastery at a ripe old age.

There was also another monk named Isaac. While still in the world, he was very rich, since in the secular life he was by birth a merchant of Toropets. But he resolved to become a monk, and distributed his fortune to the needy and to the monasteries. He then approached the great Antonius in the crypt, and besought him to receive him into the order. Antonius accepted him, and put upon him the monastic habit, calling him (192) Isaac, for his secular name was Chern'. Isaac adopted an ascetic mode of life. He wrapped himself in a hair-shirt, then caused a goat to be brought, flayed it, and put on the skin over his hair-shirt, so that the flesh hide dried upon him. He shut himself up in a lonely gallery of the crypt in a narrow cell only four ells across, and there lamented and prayed to God. His sustenance was one wafer, and that only once a day, and he drank but moderately of water. The great Antonius carried it to him, and passed it in to him by a little window through which he inserted his arm. Thus Isaac received his food. He subsisted thus for seven years without seeing the light of day or even lying down upon his side, for he snatched what sleep he could in a sitting posture.

Once, when evening had fallen, he had knelt till midnight singing psalms, as was his wont, and when he was wearied, he sat down upon his stool. As he sat there, and had as usual extinguished his candle, a light suddenly blazed forth in the crypt as if it shone from the sun, and strong enough to take away man's vision. Two fair youths then approached him. Their faces were radiant like the sun, and they said to him, "Isaac, we are angels; Christ is drawing near to you. Fall down and worship him." He did not understand their devilish artifice nor remember to cross himself, but knelt before the work of the demons as if to Christ himself. The demons then cried out and said, "Now, Isaac, you belong to us." They led him back into his cell and set him down. They then seated themselves around him, and both the cell (193) and the aisle of the crypt was filled with them. One of the devils, who called himself Christ, bade them take flutes and lyres and lutes and play, so that Isaac could dance before them. So they struck up with flutes, lutes, and lyres, and began to make sport of him. After they had tormented him, they left him half alive, and went away when they had beaten him.

The next day at dawn, when it was time to break bread, Antonius came to the window according to his custom and said, "May the Lord bless you, Father Isaac." But there was no answer. Then Antonius said,

"He has already passed away," so he sent into the monastery in search of Theodosius and the brethren. After digging out the entrance where it had been walled up, they entered and lifted him up, thinking him dead, and carried him out in front of the crypt. They then perceived that he was still alive, and Theodosius the prior said, "This comes from the devil's artifice." They laid him upon a bier, and Antonius cared for him.

About this same time it happened that Izyaslav returned from Poland, and was angry with Antonius on account of Vseslav, so that Svyatoslav caused Antonius to escape by night to Chernigov. When Antonius arrived there, he was attracted by the Boldinÿ hills, and after digging another crypt, he settled there. At that spot in the Boldinÿ hills, there is a monastery dedicated to the Virgin even to this day. When Theodosius learned that Antonius (194) had fled to Chernigov, he came with his brethren, took Isaac, and bore him to his own cell, where he cared for him. For Isaac was so weakened in body that he could not turn from one side to the other, nor rise up, nor sit down, but he lay always upon one side, and relieved himself as he lay, so that numerous worms were caused under his back by his excrement. Theodosius washed and dressed him with his own hands, and for two years cared for him thus. It is wondrous and strange that he lay thus for two years, tasting neither bread nor water nor any other food nor fruit, nor did he speak with his tongue, but lay deaf and dumb for the whole two years.

Theodosius prayed to God in his behalf, and offered supplications over him by day and by night, until in the third year he spoke and heard, rose upon his feet like a babe, and began to walk. He would not go faithfully to church, but the brethren carried him thither by force; they also taught him to go to the refectory, but seated him apart from the rest of the brethren. They set bread before him, but he would not take it unless they placed it in his hand. Theodosius then said, "Leave the bread before him, but do not put it in his hand, so that he can eat of his own volition." For a week he ate nothing, but gradually he became aware (195) of the bread and tasted it. Thus he began to eat, and by this means Theodosius freed him from the craft of the devil.

Isaac then assumed severe abstinence. When Theodosius was dead and Stephen was prior in his stead, Isaac said, "Demon, you deceived me once when I sat in a lonely spot. I must not confine myself in the crypt, but must vanquish you while I frequent the monastery." He then clad himself in a hair-shirt, and put on over this a sackcloth coat, and began to act strangely. He undertook to help the cooks in the

preparation of food for the brotherhood. He went to matins earlier than the others, and stood firm and immovable. When winter came with its heavy frosts, he stood in shoes so worn that his feet froze to the pavement, but he would not move his feet till matins were over. After matins, he went to the kitchen, and made ready the fire, the water, and the wood before the other cooks came from the brotherhood.

There was one cook who was also named Isaac, who mocked at Isaac and said, "There sits a black crow; go and catch it." Isaac bowed to the ground before him, then went and caught the crow, and brought it back to him in the presence of all the cooks. They were frightened and reported it to the prior and the brotherhood, who began to respect him. But not being desirous of human glory, he began to act strangely, (196) and to play tricks, now on the prior, now on the brethren, and now on laymen, so that the others dealt him blows. Then he began to wander through the country, acting like an idiot. He settled in the crypt where he had formerly lived, for Antonius was already dead. He gathered young men about him and laid upon them the monastic habit, so that he suffered blows from the Prior Nikon as well as from the parents of these youths. But he suffered these hardships, and willingly endured blows and nakedness and cold by day and by night.

One night he lit the stove in a cabin by the crypt. When the stove was heated, fire began to issue forth from the crevices, for it was old and cracked. Since he had nothing to put over the stove, he braced his bare feet against the flame till the stove burned out, and then left it. Many other stories were told about him, and I myself witnessed some such occurrences.

Thus he won his victory over the demons, holding their terrors and apparitions of as little account as flies. For he said to them, "You did indeed deceive me the first time in the crypt, since I did not perceive your craft and cunning. But now that I have on my side the Lord Jesus Christ and my God and the prayers of my father Theodosius, I hope to vanquish you." Many times the demons harassed him, and said, "You belong to us, for you have worshipped us and our leader." (197) But he replied, "Your chief is Antichrist and you are demons," and signed his countenance with the Cross. At this they disappeared. Sometimes, however, they came upon him again by night, and frightened him in his dreams, appearing like a great company with mattocks and spades, and saying, "We will undermine the crypt, and bury this man within it," while others exclaimed, "Fly, Isaac, they intend to bury you alive." But he made answer, "If you were men, you would have

come by day; but you are darkness and come in darkness, and the darkness shall swallow you up." Then he made the sign of the Cross against them, and they vanished.

On other occasions, they endeavored to terrify him in the form of a bear, sometimes as a wild beast and sometimes as a bull. Now snakes beset him, and now toads, mice, and every other reptile. But they could not harm him, and said to him, "Isaac, you have vanquished us!" He replied, "You conquered me in the image of Jesus Christ and his angels, of whose sight you are unworthy. But now you rightly appear in the guise of beasts and cattle or as the snakes and reptiles that you are, repulsive and evil to behold." Thereupon the demons left him, and he suffered no more evil at their hands. As he himself related, his struggle against them lasted for three years. (198) Then he began to live still more strictly, and to practice abstinence, fasting, and vigil.

After thus living out his life, he finally came to his end. He fell sick in his crypt, and was carried in his illness to the monastery, where he died in the Lord upon the eighth day. The Prior John and the brethren clothed his body and buried him.

Such were the monks of the monastery of Theodosius, who shine forth like radiant beacons since their decease, and intercede with God in behalf of the brethren here below, as well as for the lay brotherhood and for those who contribute to the monastery in which to this day the brotherhood abides together in virtuous life amid hymns, prayers, and obedience, to the glory of Almighty God, and protected by the intercession of Theodosius, to whom be glory, Amen.

6583 (1075). The crypt church was continued on its foundation by Stephen the Prior. For Theodosius began its foundation, while Stephen continued it thereon, until it was completed on July 11 of the third year of its construction. Ambassadors from Germany came to Svyatoslav in this year, and in his pride, he showed them his riches. They beheld the innumerable quantity of his gold, silver and silks, but remarked, "This is nothing, for it lies dead. Servants are preferable to this treasure, for vassals (199) can win still greater wealth." Thus Hezekiah, King of the Jews, boasted before the ambassadors of the King of Assyria, and all his treasures were carried away to Babylon. Likewise after Svyatoslav's death all his riches were scattered.²³⁸

6584 (1076). Vladimir, son of Vsevolod, and Oleg, son of Svyatoslav, went forth to aid the Poles against the Czechs.²³⁹ On December 27 of this year Svyatoslav, son of Yaroslav, died from the cutting of a sore, and was buried in Chernigov by the Church of the Redeemer.²⁴⁰ On January 1, Vsevolod succeeded to his throne. In this year, a son

was born to Vladimir; he was named Mstislav, and was grandson of Vsevolod.

6585 (1077). Izyaslav advanced with Polish support,²⁴¹ and Vsevolod went forth against him. Boris settled at Chernigov on May 4; his reign lasted eight days until he fled to join Roman in Tmutorakan'.²⁴² Vsevolod went to Volyn' to attack his brother Izyaslav. Peace was concluded, so that Izyaslav came and settled in Kiev on July 15. Oleg, the son of Svyatoslav, was with Vsevolod at Chernigov.

6586 (1078). Oleg, son of Svyatoslav, fled from Vsevolod to Tmutorakan' on April 10.²⁴³ In this year, Gleb, the son of Svyatoslav, was killed in Zavaloch'e.²⁴⁴ Gleb was kindly toward the poor and hospitable to strangers, zealous toward the church, warm in faith, peaceful, and fair in appearance. He was laid to rest (200) in the Church of the Redeemer at Chernigov on July 23.

While Svyatopolk, the son of Izyaslav, was ruling at Novgorod in his stead, and while Yaropolk²⁴⁵ was reigning in Vyshgorod and Vladimir²⁴⁶ at Smolensk, Oleg and Boris led the pagans to attack Rus', and fell upon Vsevolod with their Polovcian reinforcements. Vsevolod advanced to meet them as far as the Sozhitsa.²⁴⁷ The Polovcians then vanquished the Russes, and many lost their lives. Ivan, son of Zhiroslav, and Tukÿ, the brother of Chudin, along with Porey and many others, met their deaths there on August 28. Oleg and Boris arrived before Chernigov, thinking they had won, and they visited much harm upon the land of Rus'. They shed Christian blood, which God will avenge upon them, and they will have to answer for their destruction of Christian souls.

Vsevolod joined his brother Izyaslav at Kiev, and after embracing each other, they settled there. Vsevolod then reported all that had occurred. Then Izyaslav said to him, "Brother, do not sorrow. Do you not see what misfortune has happened to me? Did they not first expel me and confiscate my possessions? And what was later my second fault, that I was driven out by you, my own brethren? Have I not wandered through foreign lands, and suffered the loss of my estate? I had done no wrong. Let us therefore not give way to sorrow now, my brother. We shall each of us have his share in Rus', and if we lose it, (201) then I am ready to lay down my life for you." With these words he consoled Vsevolod, and ordered that warriors old and young should be gathered together.

Izyaslav set out with Yaropolk his son, and Vsevolod went forth with his son Vladimir. They arrived before Chernigov, but the inhabitants barricaded themselves within the city. Oleg and Boris were

not there. Since the citizens of Chernigov would not open the gates, the brethren attacked the city. Vladimir made his attack at the eastern entrance, where he captured the gates from the side of the Strizhen'. They thus opened the outer city and set fire to it, while the inhabitants fled to the inner city. Izyaslav and Vsevolod then learned that Oleg and Boris were on the way to attack them, and hurriedly sallied forth from the city to meet Oleg. Oleg then suggested to Boris that they should not attack, for they could hardly withstand four princes, and he therefore proposed that they should make some proposition to their uncles. Boris replied, "Behold our present strength, I will rather fight them all," boasting exceedingly, because he did not know that God resists the proud, but gives grace to the humble, so that the strong man may not boast of his strength.

They then advanced to the attack. When they were at a place near a village on the meadow of Nezhata,²⁴⁸ both forces met, and the carnage was awful. Boris, the son of Vyacheslav, who had so proudly boasted, was the first to fall. While Izyaslav was standing among the foot-soldiers, one man suddenly rode up and struck him in the shoulder with his spear. Thus Izyaslav, the son of Yaroslav, met his death. While the battle was still in progress, Oleg himself fled with a small escort, and escaped with difficulty. (202) He took refuge in Tmutor-akan'.²⁴⁹

Prince Izyaslav was killed on October 3. His body was taken up, and after it was transported by boat, it was laid before Gorodets.²⁵⁰ The whole city of Kiev went forth to meet it. It was laid upon a sledge, and the priests and the monks escorted it with their chants into the city. But their chanting could not be heard for the lamentation and great mourning, since the whole city of Kiev bewailed him. Yaropolk followed the body, weeping with his retinue. "Father, my father," he lamented, "hast thou lived without sorrow in this world, whilst thou didst suffer many assaults from thy people and thy brethren? He perished not by a brother's hand, but he laid down his life for his brother." His body was brought in and laid in the Church of the Holy Virgin, inclosed in a marble casket.

Izyaslav was a man fair of appearance and imposing in stature, not malicious in temper, but a hater of injustice and a lover of rectitude. In him there was no guile, for he was a simple man who did not render evil for evil. How much hardship the people of Kiev had visited upon him! They had expelled him and plundered his house, yet he did not requite these misdeeds with evil. If any man say, "The executioner has killed such and such a man," it was not Izyaslav who caused this deed,

but his son. Then brothers expelled him, and he went wandering through foreign lands. Later, when he was again restored to his throne, and Vsevolod sought refuge at his court, he did not ask Vsevolod how much harm he had endured at Vsevolod's hands. He did not return evil for evil, but consoled his brother, saying, "Brother, you have proved your love for me, and you have restored me to my throne, and (203) you have called me your chief. I will not remember former malice, for you are my brother and I am yours, and I will lay down my life for you," as indeed he did. He did not say to Vsevolod, "How much evil you have done me! Now in your good turn evil has befallen you." He did not say, "All this does not concern me," but instead he took upon himself his brother's sorrow, and proved his great love for him, thus fulfilling the words of the Apostle, "Console the sorrowful" (*I Thess.*, v, 14). If he committed any sin in this world, verily shall it be forgiven him, because he laid down his life for his brother, not because he desired either a greater realm of greater wealth, but in consequence of his brother's wrongs.

The Lord has said of such men, "Let a man lay down his life for his friend" (*John*, xv, 13). Solomon also said, "Brethren, be ready to aid one another in adversity" (*Prov.*, xvii, 17). For love is above all things, even as John said, "God is love. He who dwelleth in love, dwelleth in God, and God dwelleth in him. Love is thus perfected that we may have dignity on the day of judgment, in order that as he is, so we may also be in this world. There is no fear in love, but perfect love casteth out fear, since fear hath torment, and he who is afraid is not perfect in love. If any man say, 'I love God,' and hateth his brother, it is a lie. How can he who hateth his brother whom he seeth love God whom he seeth not? We have this commandment from him, that he who loveth God shall love his brother also" (*I John*, iv, 16-18, 20-21). For all is perfected in love. Through love sins are washed away, out of love the Lord descended to earth and was crucified for us (204) sinners, and after taking away our sins he was nailed to the Cross, thus giving us his Cross for the elimination of the devil's hatred. Out of love this Prince shed his blood for his brother, thus fulfilling the Lord's commandment.²⁵¹

Vsevolod reigned in Kiev on the throne of his father and his brother, after assuming the sovereignty over all Rus'. He set up his son Vladimir at Chernigov and placed Yaropolk at the city of Vladimir [Volynsk], to which he added the district of Turov.²⁵²

6587 (1079). Roman advanced with Polovcian forces as far as Voin',²⁵³ but Vsevolod remained near Pereyasavl' and made peace with

the Polovcians. Roman returned homeward with them, but they killed him on August 2. The bones of Svyatoslav's son and Yaroslav's grandson still lie there even to this day. The Khazars took Oleg prisoner and shipped him overseas to Tsar'grad.²⁵⁴ Vsevolod appointed Ratibor as his lieutenant in 'Tmutorakan'.²⁵⁵

6588 (1080). The Torks of Pereyaslav' made an attack upon Rus'. Vsevolod sent forth his son Vladimir, who went out and conquered them.²⁵⁶

6589 (1081). David, the son of Igor', and Volodar', the son of Rostislav fled on May 18, and upon their arrival at 'Tmutorakan', they captured Ratibor and settled there as princes.²⁵⁷

(205) 6590 (1082). Osen', Prince of the Polovcians, passed away.

6591 (1083). Oleg returned from Greece to 'Tmutorakan', and established himself there after he had captured David and Volodar'.²⁵⁸ He slaughtered the Khazars who had counseled the death of his brother and had plotted against himself, but he released David and Volodar'.

6592 (1084). Yaropolk came to visit Vsevolod upon Easter Day. At this time, the two sons of Rostislav had fled from Yaropolk, and later had returned and expelled him. Vsevolod then despatched his own son Vladimir to drive out the sons of Rostislav.²⁵⁹ He then set up Yaropolk as prince of the city of Vladimir [Volynsk]. In this year, David made captives of the merchants going to Greece at Oleshki, and confiscated their property.²⁶⁰ Vsevolod sent after him, brought him to Kiev, and presented him with Dorogobuzh.²⁶¹

6593 (1085). Incited by evil advisers, Yaropolk planned an attack upon Vsevolod. When Vsevolod learned of his project, he sent his son Vladimir to oppose him.²⁶² Yaropolk left his mother and his retainers at Lutsk²⁶³ and fled into Poland. When Vladimir arrived at Lutsk, the inhabitants surrendered. He set up David at the city of Vladimir in the place of Yaropolk, confiscated Yaropolk's property, and brought to Kiev his mother, his wife, and his retainers.

(206) 6594 (1086). Vsevolod founded the Church of St. Andrew²⁶⁴ during the tenure of the holy Metropolitan John.²⁶⁵ Beside this church he also built a convent in which his daughter, Yanka by name, became a nun while still a maiden. This same Yanka assembled many nuns, and dwelt among them according to the monastic rule.²⁶⁶

Yaropolk returned from Poland and made peace with Vladimir. The latter returned again to Chernigov, while Yaropolk took up his residence at the city of Vladimir [Volynsk]. After remaining there a few days, he went to Zvenigorod.²⁶⁷ Before he had reached that city, he was struck down by the accursed Neradets, who had been incited

by the devil and by evil men. As he lay upon his sled, Neradets killed him with his sword on November 22. Yaropolk raised himself up, drew the sword from his body, and cried out in a loud voice, "Ah, enemy, you have caught me!" The thrice accursed Neradets fled to Rurik, in Peremýshl'. Yaropolk's escort, including Radko, Vŷnkina, and many others, took Yaropolk on their horses before them, and carried him to the city of Vladimir, and thence to Kiev. The pious Prince Vsevolod went out to meet him, accompanied by his sons Vladimir and Rostislav, by all the boyars, and by the blessed Metropolitan John with his monks and presbyters. All the people of Kiev raised great lamentation for him, and brought him with chants and hymns to St. Demetrius.²⁶⁸

They then robed his body, and on December 5 laid it honorably in a marble casket in the Church of the Holy Apostle Peter, the construction of which he himself had previously begun. After suffering many misfortunes, expelled (207) by his kinsmen without cause, persecuted, and robbed of his patrimony, he endured in the end a bitter death. But he rendered himself worthy of everlasting life and repose. This blessed prince was calm, mild, moderate, and loving toward his brethren. He gave each year a tithe of his property to the Holy Virgin, and often addressed this prayer to God, saying, "Oh Lord my God! receive my prayer, and grant me a death by an unknown hand like that of my kinsmen Boris and Gleb, so that I may wash away my sin with my blood, and thus escape this vain world and its confusion, as well as the snares of the devil." Our glorious God did not deny his request, and he has attained such blessings "as eye hath not seen nor ear heard, and such as have not entered the heart of man, which God hath prepared for them that love him" (*I Cor.*, ii, 9).

6595-6596 (1087-1088). The Church of St. Michael in Vsevolod's monastery was consecrated by the Metropolitan John, while Lazarus was prior of that monastery. In this same year, Svyatopolk departed from Novgorod to rule in Turov.²⁶⁹ In this year, Nikon, Prior of the Crypt Monastery, passed away.²⁷⁰ In this year, the Bulgars captured Murom.²⁷¹

6597 (1089). The Crypt Church of the Holy Virgin in the Theodosian monastery (208) was consecrated by John the Metropolitan; Luke, Bishop of Belgorod; Isaiah, Bishop of Rostov; John, Bishop of Chernigov; and Antonius, prior of St. George's, in the reign of the noble Prince Vsevolod, ruler of the land of Rus', and of his sons Vladimir and Rostislav, while Yan was captain of the Kiev thousand and John was prior.

In this year, John the Metropolitan passed away. John was a man

versed in books and study, generous to the poor and to the widows, affable to both rich and poor, calm-tempered and mild, reticent yet eloquent, and able to console the sorrowful with words of Holy Scripture. There never was his like in Rus' before him, nor will there be in later days.

In this year, Yanka, the above-mentioned daughter of Vsevolod, went to Greece. She brought back the Metropolitan John, a eunuch, and when the people saw him, they exclaimed, "A ghost has come." After staying a year in Kiev, he too died. He was not a learned man, but frank and simple in character.²⁷²

In this year, the Church of St. Michael at Pereyaslavl' was consecrated by Ephraim, the Metropolitan of that church, which he had constructed upon a magnificent scale. For there had previously been a metropolitan church at Pereyaslavl' to which he constructed a large addition, adorning it with all sorts of decorations and churchly vessels. Ephraim was a eunuch (209) of tall stature. At that time, he built many structures: he completed the Church of St. Michael, founded a church over the city gates dedicated to the holy martyr Theodore, as well as another church dedicated to St. Andrew near the church by the gates, and he also constructed a stone bathhouse such as had never heretofore existed in Rus'. He likewise constructed a palisade of stone which started from the Church of the holy martyr Theodore, and embellished the city of Pereyaslavl' with church buildings and other structures.

6599 (1091). The prior and the monks took counsel together, saying, "It is not meet for our father Theodosius to lie outside the monastery and the church, since he founded the church and gathered the monks together." After thus taking counsel, they directed that a place should be prepared in which to lay his bones. Three days before the feast of the Assumption of the Blessed Virgin, the prior ordered that digging should begin at the place where the bones of our father Theodosius lay and at his command, I, sinner that I am, was the first eyewitness of the attendant circumstances. What I here relate I did not learn by hearsay, but I was the initiator of it myself.

When the prior came to me and spoke, I went with him. We went to the crypt of Theodosius. Since no one knew our errand, we looked about where first to dig, and fixed upon a place outside the entrance at which to excavate. The prior then said to me, "Do not make this known to any of the brethren, so that none may learn of it. But choose whom you will (210) to aid you." On that very day I therefore prepared spades with which to dig. On the evening of Tuesday, at twilight, I took with me two brethren, keeping the rest in ignorance of

our intent, and went to the crypt. After singing psalms, I began to dig. When I grew weary, I passed the spade to another brother, and so we dug on till midnight. When we were weary and could obtain no results from our digging, I began to be concerned for fear we were digging off at the side. So I took the spade and set myself to digging vigorously, while my companion rested in front of the crypt. He remarked to me that they had just rung the bell, and at that very moment I reached the relics of Theodosius. Even as he made the remark that they had just rung the bell, I made answer, "I have found them." When I had dug down to the relics, fear came over me, and I began to exclaim, "Kyrie eleison." At this same moment, two brethren were sitting in the monastery, looking toward the crypt and waiting till the prior, accompanied by various other monks, should bring out in secret the relics of Theodosius. As the bell rang, they saw three pillars of fire like rainbows which came and stood over the place where Theodosius was laid.

At the same time, Stephen, who had succeeded Theodosius as prior and was now a bishop, saw across country from his monastery a great light shining over the crypt. Thinking that they were transporting Theodosius (for he had been informed of their intentions a day previous), and regretting that Theodosius was being moved in his absence, he leaped upon a horse and quickly set out. He brought with him (211) Clement, whom he later appointed prior as his successor, and as they rode along they beheld a great light. When they drew near, they noticed many lights over the crypt, but when they came to the crypt itself, they saw nothing. They thus descended into the crypt, and found us seated beside the relics.

When I had dug them out, I sent word to the prior that he should join us that we might remove the relics. Thus the prior came with two other brethren. I dug out a large space, and when we stepped into it, we saw the relics lying there. The members were not separated, and the hair of the head still adhered. They laid them in a cloak and carried them out in front of the crypt.

On the next day, the bishops assembled: Ephraim of Pereyaslavl', Stephen of Vladimir, John of Chernigov, Marinus of Yur'ev; and the priors of all the monasteries came with their monks, while all pious citizens gathered. They took up the relics of Theodosius amid incense and candles, and then brought him into his church, where they laid him on the right side of the chapel, on Thursday, August 14, in the fourteenth year of the indiction and at the first hour of the day. They celebrated that day solemnly.²⁷³

Now I shall briefly relate how a prophecy of Theodosius was fulfilled. While he still exercised the priorship, and directed during his lifetime the flock of monks whom God had entrusted to his charge,²⁷⁴ he cared for the souls not only of the solitaries themselves, but also of laymen (212) to ensure their salvation; and he was especially zealous in the interest of his spiritual sons, for he consoled and admonished those who sought his aid, and at times even entered their homes and imparted his blessing to them. Sometimes he went thus to the house of Yan to visit him and his wife Maria, for Theodosius loved them, since they lived according to the commandments of the Lord and dwelt in affection with each other. On one occasion while he was visiting them, he instructed them concerning the giving of alms to the poor, the Kingdom of Heaven which the righteous shall inherit, the torments of sinners, and the hour of death. While he was thus discussing with them the laying of the body in the grave, Yan's wife said to him, "Who knows where I shall be laid to rest?" Theodosius made answer to her, "Verily I say unto you, where I lie, there shall you be laid also." His prophecy was actually fulfilled. For after the prior had died, his words were realized eighteen years later. In that year, on August 16, Yan's wife, by name of Maria, passed away. The monks came, and after the customary hymns, they took her up and laid her in the Church of the Holy Virgin, on the left side opposite the tomb of Theodosius.²⁷⁵ Theodosius had been laid to rest on August 14, and she was buried on August 16.

Thus was fulfilled the prophecy of our blessed father Theodosius, that good shepherd who fed his wise sheep without hypocrisy, in mildness and in prudence, watching over them and protecting them, and abounding in (213) prayer for the flock entrusted to him, for the Christian nations, and for the land of Rus'.

After thy departure from this world, thou prayest for all true believers and for the disciples who, as they gaze upon thy tomb, recall thy instruction and thy abstinence, and glorify God. I thy sinful servant and disciple know not how to praise thy noble life and temperance. But this little I shall say: Rejoice, our father and leader, who has rejected the tumult of the world, who hast loved tranquility, and didst serve God in the peace of the monastic life. Thou hast acquired every divine gift, exalted thyself with fasting, hatred carnal lusts and indulgence, and has cast aside the beauty and the desire of this world to follow in the footsteps of the sublime fathers and to rival them in their tranquility. Thou hast exalted thyself and adorned thyself in thy moderation and hast won happiness through the words of Holy Writ.

Rejoice, thou who wast strengthened in hope, who hast attained eternal bliss. Through thy victory over carnal desire, the source of transgression and confusion, thou hast escaped the crafts of the devil and hast won thy repose among the righteous, where thou receivest requital for thy labors and art become the heir of the patriarchs, since thou hast followed their instructions, their usage, and their continence, and hast maintained their rule. Thou hast further imitated Theodosius the Great in thy character and thy mode of life, since thou didst follow his manner of living and imitate his continence, (214) and by the adoption of his habits thou hast advanced in perfection with thy every action, as thou didst offer the ritual petitions to God, and didst thus lift up the censer of prayer as an offering of sweet-scented incense in the perfume of gratitude. Having conquered earthly lust and the ruler of this world, having trampled underfoot our adversary the devil and his wiles, thou hast stood forth the victor through thy opposition to his hostile darts and proud devices, since thou wast strengthened through God's help in the armor of the Cross and in faith immutable. Pray for me, holy Father, that I may be freed from the snares of the devil, and guard me with thy prayers against the hostile adversary.²⁷⁶

In this year, there was a portent in the sun, which seemed about to disappear. At the second hour of the day, on May 21, only part of it remained visible, approximating the size of the moon.²⁷⁷ In this year, while Vsevolod was hunting wild beasts behind Vyshgorod, and as the men were stretching snares and the beaters were shouting, a huge serpent fell from the sky, and all the people were terrified. At this time the earth uttered a groan audible to many. In this year a magician appeared at Rostov, but perished shortly afterward.

6600 (1092). An extraordinary event occurred at Polotsk. At night there was heard a clatter and a groaning in the streets, and demons ran about like men. If any citizen went forth from his house to look upon them, he was wounded straightway by some invisible (215) demon, and so many perished from such wounds that the people dared no longer leave their houses. The demons later began to appear on horseback during the day. They were not visible themselves, but the hoofs of their horses could be seen. Thus they did injury to the people of Polotsk and the vicinity, so that it was commonly said that ghosts were killing the people of Polotsk. This portent had its beginning in Dryutesk. At this time, a sign appeared in the heavens like a huge circle in the midst of the sky. There was a drought in this year, so that the earth was burned over, and many pine forests and peat-bogs were consumed.²⁷⁸ There were many portents in various localities,

and incursions of the Polovcians were reported from all quarters. They captured three cities, Pesochen, Perevolok, and Priluk,²⁷⁹ and ravaged many villages on both banks of the Dnieper. In this year the Polovcians attacked the Poles with Vasil'ko son of Rostislav. In this year, Rurik, the son of Rostislav, passed away.²⁸⁰ At the same time, many died of various diseases, so that the undertakers asserted that in the interval between St. Philip's Day²⁸¹ and Lent they had sold seven thousand coffins. This misfortune was occasioned by our sins, because our transgressions and our unrighteousness had increased. God brought this calamity upon us as a summons to repent and to renounce sin, envy, and other evil works of the devil.

6601 (1093), the first year of the indiction. The Great Prince Vsevolod, the son of Yaroslav, (216) and the grandson of Vladimir, died on April 13, and was buried the next day on Thursday of Holy Week. Upon that day he was committed to the tomb in the great Church of St. Sophia.²⁸² From his childhood, the pious Prince Vsevolod had been a servant of God. He loved justice, aided the poor, rendered due honor to bishops and priests, loved monks exceedingly and ministered to their necessities. He abstained from drunkenness and indulgence, and was therefore beloved of his father, so that the latter said to him, "My son, may God bless you, since I hear of your meekness, and I rejoice that you have rendered my old age peaceful. If God grant that you succeed your brothers upon my throne justly and without the exercise of violence, may you lie beside my tomb where I lie when God takes you from this world, for I love you more than your brethren." This prayer of his father was fulfilled according as he had said, for after the decease of his brethren, Vsevolod inherited the throne of his father as their successor, though while he reigned at Kiev he faced greater obstacles than had beset him when he was Prince in Pereyasavl'.

While he ruled in Kiev, he suffered distress at the hands of his nephews, who importuned him with their demands for various domains. After he had pacified them, he bestowed various domains upon them. During these troubles, he was afflicted also by sickness, (217) to which old age was added. He then began to take pleasure in the opinions of young men, and consulted with them. They induced him to withdraw his favor from his older retainers. The people no longer had access to the Prince's justice, judges became corrupt and venal, and the Prince in his illness was ignorant of these abuses. When his illness was aggravated, he summoned his son Vladimir from Chernigov, and when Vladimir, upon his arrival, found him critically ill, he wept sorely. Vsevolod thus passed away quietly when his hour came, in the presence

of Vladimir and of Rostislav, his younger son, and rejoined his father, after he had ruled for fifteen years in Kiev and a year each in Pereyaslavl' and Chernigov.²⁸³ After he had mourned with his brother Rostislav, Vladimir laid his father's body in the tomb. After the bishops, the priors, the monks, the priests, the boyars, and the common people had assembled together, they took up the corpse with the customary hymns, and laid it in St. Sophia, as we said before.

Vladimir now reflected that if he succeeded immediately to the throne of his father, he would become involved in hostilities with Svyatopolk, because the throne of Kiev had belonged to that Prince's father. After thus taking thought, he summoned Svyatopolk from Turov, while he himself departed to Chernigov and Rostislav to Pereyaslavl'.²⁸⁴ When Easter was over (218) and the week after Easter had passed, Svyatopolk arrived at Kiev on April 24, the first Sunday after Easter. The inhabitants of Kiev went forth to meet him and offer him homage, and welcome him joyously. He thus occupied the throne of his father and his uncle. At this moment, the Polovcians attacked Rus', but when they learned that Vsevolod was dead, they sent propositions for peace to Svyatopolk. Without consulting with the numerous adherents of his father and his uncle, but taking counsel only with those who had accompanied him to the capital, Svyatopolk seized the Polovcian envoys and cast them into prison. When the Polovcians heard of this outrage, they immediately declared war. A large force of them thus laid siege to the city of Torchesk.²⁸⁵ Being desirous of peace, Svyatopolk released the Polovcian envoys.

The Polovcians, however, were not anxious for peace, and continued their attacks. Svyatopolk then set out to recruit a force with the intention of attacking them. The wise men advised him not to oppose the nomads, since his force was small. He replied that he had eight hundred of his followers who could easily withstand them. Other rash advisers urged him to pursue his project, but the wiser heads informed him that even if he had a force of eight thousand, it would be none too strong. They reminded him that the country was already impoverished by war and taxes, and suggested that he should ask his cousin Vladimir (219) for aid. Svyatopolk followed their advice, and sent to Vladimir a request for assistance. Vladimir assembled his troops, and requested his brother Rostislav at Pereyaslavl' to give Svyatopolk his support as well. When Vladimir arrived at Kiev, the cousins met at St. Michael's²⁸⁶ and composed between them their quarrels and disagreements. They were thus reconciled, and kissed the Cross to seal their compact. While the Polovcians were ravaging the countryside, the wise

counsellors said to the prince, "Why do you allow discord to part you? Behold, the pagans lay waste the land of Rus'. You may arrive at an understanding at some later time, but for the present go out and meet the pagans either to conclude a peace or to wage war." Vladimir favored a peace, but Svyatopolk was for war.

Svyatopolk, Vladimir, and Rostislav thus proceeded toward Trepol'.²⁸⁷ They arrived at the Stugna,²⁸⁸ and before crossing the river, they called their followers into consultation and began to deliberate. Vladimir suggested that in view of the present danger they had better remain on the near side of the river and make peace with the Polovcians. Yan and the other prudent men supported this opinion, but the men of Kiev were not in accord with it, and urged the crossing of the river because they were eager to fight. This counsel found favor, and they crossed the river Stugna, which at the moment was considerably swollen. After marshalling their troops, Svyatopolk, Vladimir, and Rostislav (220) then moved forward. Svyatopolk marched on the right wing, Vladimir on the left, and Rostislav led the centre. When they had passed Trepol' they passed the rampart. Then the Polovcians advanced to the attack with their bowmen in the van. When our men took position between the ramparts they set up their standards, and the bowmen advanced outside the rampart. The Polovcians reached the rampart, raised their standards, and first attacked Svyatopolk, whose troop they broke up. Svyatopolk made a firm stand, but his soldiers fled without resisting the pagan onslaught, and he himself was obliged to flee also. The Polovcians then attacked Vladimir. The battle was fierce, and Vladimir took to flight with Rostislav. In their flight, they arrived at the river Stugna, and dived in. Rostislav straightway began to drown before Vladimir's very eyes. He was anxious to save his brother, and almost perished himself in the attempt. But Rostislav, the son of Vsevolod, thus met his death.

Vladimir swam the river with a small escort, for many of his troops and his boyars had fallen. When he arrived at the other bank of the Dnieper, he bewailed his brother and his followers, and thus returned to Chernigov heavy with sorrow. Svyatopolk escaped to Trepol' and there barricaded himself. He remained there till evening, and during the night departed for Kiev.

Upon perceiving their victory, the Polovcians scattered upon marauding expeditions (221) throughout the countryside, while others returned to Torchesk. This misfortune occurred on May 26, the day of the Ascension of our Lord Jesus Christ. Those who searched for Rostislav's body found it in the stream, and they brought it back to Kiev.

His mother wept over him, and the people pitied him greatly because of his youth. The bishops, the monks, and the priests assembled to sing the usual chants, and they laid him to rest beside his father in the Church of St. Sophia. While the Polovcians were beseiging Torchesk, the inhabitants resisted and fought boldly from the town, so that they killed many of the enemy. The Polovcians then began to press them hard and cut off their water supply, so that the inhabitants weakened from hunger and thirst. They thus sent messages to Svyatopolk to inform him that unless he sent them food supplies they would be obliged to surrender. Svyatopolk despatched the supplies, but because of the multitude of the besiegers it was impossible to introduce them into the town. When the enemy had thus beleaguered the town for nine weeks, they divided into two parties, one of which remained near the city to prosecute the siege, while the rest marched toward Kiev and scattered on raiding parties between Kiev and Vÿshgorod. Svyatopolk sallied forth in the direction of Zhelan'²⁸⁹ where the two forces advanced to the attack. When the battle-lines met, a fierce combat ensued, but our men fled before the pagans, and many perished, even a larger number than at 'Tropol'. Svyatopolk (222) arrived at Kiev with two companions, and the Polovcians returned to Torchesk. This sad event took place on July 23. Upon the next day, that is, on July 24, the festival of the holy martyrs Boris and Gleb, there was no joy in the city, but only lamentation, because of our manifold sins and unrighteousness and for the multiplication of our transgressions.

God sent the pagans upon us, not because he held them dear, but to chastise us that we might abstain from evil deeds. He thus punishes us by the incursions of the pagans (for they are the scourge of God) that we may perhaps repent and turn from our wicked way. For this reason, God visits us with affliction upon festal days, just as in this year the first catastrophe, which occurred at 'Tropol', took place on Ascension Day, while the second occurred on the feast of Boris and Gleb, which is a new festival in Rus'. It was thus that the prophet said, "I will change your feasts to mourning and your songs to lamentation" (*Amos*, viii, 10). For God caused great mourning in our land; our villages and our towns were desolated, and we fled before our foes.

As the prophet said, "Ye shall be slain before your enemies; they that hate you shall oppress you, and ye shall flee when none pursueth you. I will break the arrogance of your pride, and your strength shall be spent in vain. The sword of the stranger shall kill you, your land shall be desolate, and your courts laid waste. (223). For ye are worthless and contrary, and I will walk contrary to you also in anger, saith

the Lord God of Israel" (*Lev. xxvi, 17-33*). For the malignant sons of Ishmael burned villages and granges, and consumed many churches with fire.

Let no one marvel at these misfortunes, for condign chastisement ensues wherever many sins are committed. For this reason the world shall ultimately come to its end. For this same reason, malice has now been spread abroad, and our own native land has fallen prey to torment; some of our compatriots are led into servitude, others are slain, and some are even delivered up to vengeance and endure a bitter death. Some tremble as they cast their eyes upon the slain, and others perish of hunger and thirst. Universal sorrow and universal chastisement prevail. Our people suffer many wounds, various woes, and awful torture. Some of them are bound and trampled underfoot, exposed to the chill of winter, and sorely wounded. And what is stranger and more terrible, it is among a Christian nation that this fear and terror and distress has been spread abroad.

Yet it is meet and right that we should be so chastised, and we suffer correction in proportion to our little faith. We have deserved to be delivered into the hands of an alien people, the most fearsome of all the world. Let us therefore cry aloud, "Righteous art thou, oh Lord, and righteous are thy judgments" (*Ps., cxviii, 137*). Let us say like the thief upon the cross, "We receive the due reward of our deeds" (*Luke, xxiii, 41*). Let us exclaim with Job, "It hath been as the Lord appointed; blessed be the name of the Lord forever" (*Job, i, 21*). Through the incursions of the pagans and the torments which we suffer at their hands may we come to know the Lord whom we have angered. Though glorified by him, we have not glorified him; though honored by him, we have not honored him; though hallowed, (224) we have not understood it; though redeemed, we have not requited our redemption; reborn to righteousness, we have not revered our father. We are punished for our sins, we suffer in proportion to our misdeeds. All our cities are desolate, our villages are laid waste. We traverse the fields where horses, sheep, and cattle once grazed in herds, and behold them desolate. The meadows are grown wild, and have become the lairs of wild beasts. Yet we still hope in the mercy of God; for the Blessed Lord punishes us with kindly intent. "He hath not dealt with us after our sins, nor rewarded us according to our iniquities" (*Ps., ciii, 10*). It is thus meet for the Blessed Lord to punish us not in strict proportion to the multitude of our iniquities, and even so has the Lord done unto us. For he restored his fallen creatures; he forgave the sin of Adam, and bestowed upon us the bath of purification when he shed his blood for

us. When he beheld us living in unrighteousness, he brought upon us the present war and affliction so that even against our will we might find mercy in the life to come. For the soul that suffers in this world shall find in the next mercy and freedom from torment, for the Lord does not twice exact atonement for these transgressions. Ah, his ineffable love for humanity, when he beholds us returning to him even against our will! Ah, the depths of his love for us! Inasmuch as we voluntarily transgressed against his commandments, we must of necessity suffer chastisement against our will, and since we suffer against our will let us at least endure with resignation. When was sorrow known among us heretofore? Yet now our whole life is full of tears. When was sighing ever heard among us? Yet weeping is now spread abroad through all the streets because of the dead whom the infidels have slain.

The Polovcians harried widely, and (225) then returned to Torchesk. The inhabitants were weakened by hunger, and therefore surrendered to the enemy. The Polovcians, upon taking the city, destroyed it by fire, divided the inhabitants, and led them away among their tents to their relatives and kin. A multitude of Christian people were thus reduced to dire distress; sorrowing, tormented, weak with cold, their faces ravaged with hunger, thirst, and misfortune, their bodies black with blows, as they made their painful way, naked and barefoot, upon feet torn with thorns, toward an unknown land and barbarous races. In tears they made answer one to another, saying, "I was of this city," and others, "I came from that village." Thus they tearfully questioned one another, and spoke of their families, as they sighed and lifted up their eyes to the Most High, who knoweth all secrets.

Let no one venture to say that we are hated of God, lest it might be so. For whom does God love, as he has loved us? Whom has he so glorified as he has glorified and exalted us? None. So much the more have we incurred his wrath because, being honored of God before all the rest, we sinned more flagrantly than all the rest. Since we were enlightened before all other men, but knew the Lord's will and scorned it, we are chastised more severely for our correction than other men. For sinner that I am, I anger God much and often, and commit some transgression every day.²⁹⁰

On October 1 of this year, Rostislav, the son of Mstislav and the grandson of Izyaslav, passed away, and he was buried (226) on November 16 in the Church of the Holy Virgin of the Tithe.

6602 (1094). Svyatopolk made peace with the Polovcians, and took to wife the daughter of their prince Tugorkan.²⁹¹ In this same year, Oleg²⁹² arrived from 'Timutorakan' before Chernigov with a force of

Polovcians. Vladimir fortified himself in the city. Oleg then approached and burned the environs, including the monasteries. Vladimir made peace with Oleg, and departed from Chernigov to occupy his father's throne in Pereyasavl', while Oleg took possession of the city that had been his own father's. The Polovcians committed many depredations in the vicinity of Chernigov, and Oleg made no attempt to restrain them for the reason that he himself had inspired their raids. This was, in fact, the third time that he had led a force of pagans to attack Rus'. May God forgive his sin, for many Christians were destroyed, while others were taken captive and scattered throughout the lands.

On August 26 of the same year, a plague of locusts attacked Rus', and ate up all the grass and much grain. Such a visitation was unheard of in the early days of Rus', but in consequence of our sins, our eyes beheld it.

In this year, on April 27, at the sixth hour of the night, died Stephen, Bishop of Vladimir, who had formerly been Prior of the Crypt Monastery.²⁰³

6603 (1095). The Polovcians under the son of Diogenes attacked Greece, and devastated the Grecian territory. (227) The Emperor captured the son of Diogenes and had him blinded.²⁰⁴ In the same year, the Polovcians Itlar' and Kÿtan came to Vladimir to sue for peace. Itlar' entered the city of Pereyasavl', while Kÿtan remained between the ramparts with his soldiery. Vladimir gave his son Svyatoslav as a hostage to Kÿtan, while Itlar' remained in the city with an excellent escort. At this time, Slavyata was at Vladimir's court, whither he had come on a special mission from Svyatopolk in Kiev. The retainers of Ratibor²⁰⁵ now urged upon Vladimir the advisability of massacring Itlar's troop. Vladimir, however, was unwilling to do this deed, and averred that it was unthinkable, since he had given them pledges of safety. But his followers replied, "Oh Prince, there is no sin entailed for you in this deed. They constantly swear oaths to you, and yet they bring incessant ruin on the land of Rus' and constantly shed Christian blood." Vladimir then adopted their advice, and on that same night, sent Slavyata out between the ramparts with a small escort and some Torks. They first stole Svyatoslav away, and then killed Kÿtan and slew his retinue. It was then Saturday night. Itlar' was passing the night in Ratibor's palace with his escort, completely ignorant of the fate of Kÿtan. On Sunday, the following day, about the hour of matins, Ratibor called his followers to arms, (228) and commanded them to heat a room. Vladimir then sent his servant Bandyuk to Itlar's troop

with an invitation to join the prince after they had dressed in the heated room and breakfasted with Ratibor. Itlar' accepted the invitation. But when they had entered the heated room, they were locked in. The Russes then climbed atop it, and made a hole in the roof. Then Ol'beg, son of Ratibor, took his bow, and fitting an arrow to it, shot Itlar' through the heart. They also killed his whole escort. Thus Itlar' lost his life in evil fashion on February 24, the first Sunday in Lent, at the first hour of the day.

Svyatopolk and Vladimir summoned Oleg to join them in a foray against the Polovcians. After promising his aid, Oleg actually came, but did not follow the same route as the other princes. Svyatopolk and Vladimir arrived at the Polovcian encampment, captured it, and thus seized and led off to their own country the barbarians' cattle, horses, camels, and slaves. They then were wroth against Oleg because he had not joined their expedition against the pagans. They therefore sent to Oleg this message: "You did not accompany us upon our attack against the pagans who have brought ruin upon Rus'. You have a son of Itlar' at your court. Either kill him or deliver him up to us, for he is an enemy of Rus'." (229) Oleg paid no attention to this demand, and there was enmity between them.

In this same year, the Polovcians appeared before Yur'ev.²⁹⁶ They besieged the city all summer and had almost reduced it when Svyatopolk succeeded in pacifying them. The Polovcians returned beyond the Ros', and the citizens of Yur'ev abandoned their town and fled to Kiev. Svyatopolk ordered that a town should be built on the hill of Vitichev, and he bade the Bishop Marinus settle there with the people from Yur'ev, Sakov,²⁹⁷ and other refugees from various localities. The Polovcians then burned the deserted town of Yur'ev.

Toward the close of this year, David, the son of Svyatoslav, left Novgorod for Smolensk. The Novgorodians then went to Rostov in search of Mstislav, the son of Vladimir, and brought him to Novgorod as their prince, at the same time instructing David never to return. David thus returned to Smolensk and settled there, while Mstislav settled at Novgorod.²⁹⁸ About the same time Izyaslav, the son of Vladimir, arrived at Murom from Kursk.²⁹⁹ The people of Murom accepted him as their prince, and he took captive the regent of Oleg. On August 28 of this year, locusts came and covered the land to an extent which was terrible to behold. They then went on northward, eating up the grass and grain.

6604 (1096). Svyatopolk and Vladimir summoned Oleg to come to Kiev, that they might conclude a convention as to the defence of Rus'

before the bishops and the priors and in the presence of the vassals of their fathers (230) and of the citizens, for the purpose of defending the country against the pagans. Oleg assumed an attitude of arrogance, and made reply that it was not proper for him to submit to the judgment of a bishop, or priors, or of the common people. He was unwilling to join his cousins, because he heeded evil counsel. Svyatopolk and Vladimir then asserted, "You neither attack the pagans nor join us in counsel. You are plotting against us and desire to aid the pagans. God must judge between us."³⁰⁰ Svyatopolk and Vladimir then marched forth against Oleg to Chernigov. Oleg fled from the city on Saturday, May 3. Svyatopolk and Vladimir accordingly pursued him. Oleg escaped to Starodub,³⁰¹ where he barricaded himself in the city. The other princes then laid siege to his position. The inhabitants made effective sallies from the town, while the beleaguers attacked it, so that the casualties were serious on both sides. The conflict thus raged fiercely. The besiegers remained before the town for thirty-three days, until the inhabitants weakened from hunger. Oleg then came forth from the city asking for peace. Svyatopolk and Vladimir granted his request, but directed him first to join his brother David, and then commanded that both of them should report in Kiev before the throne of their fathers and grandfathers, since it was fitting for them to gather and make their covenant at Kiev, the oldest city in the entire country. Oleg promised to follow these instructions, and confirmed his oath by kissing the cross.

(231) At this time, Bonyak and his Polovcians appeared before Kiev on a Sunday evening, and while ravaging the environs, they burned the prince's palace at Berestovo. Kurya and another band of Polovcians ravaged simultaneously the environs of Pereyasavl', and burned Ust'e³⁰² on May 24.

Oleg departed from Starodub and arrived at Smolensk. The people of Smolensk would not receive him, so that he went on to Ryazan'. Svyatopolk and Vladimir returned each to his own domain.

In the same month, Tugorkan, the father-in-law of Svyatopolk, came to Pereyasavl' and laid siege to the city. The inhabitants fortified themselves for resistance, while Svyatopolk and Vladimir advanced against him down the west bank of the Dnieper. They arrived at Zarub³⁰³ and crossed the river without being detected by the Polovcians, for God protected them. They then marshalled their forces and advanced toward the city. When the inhabitants observed their approach, they rejoiced, and came forth to meet them, while the Polovcians were standing on the other bank of the Trubezh in battle array.

Svyatopolk and Vladimir immediately crossed the river to engage the Polovcians. Vladimir first intended to reform his troop, but they did not await his command, and instead spurred up their horses against their adversaries. When the Polovcians beheld their charge, they turned in flight, and our men pursued the foemen, cutting down their opponents. Upon this day the Lord performed a great deliverance. The aliens were thus conquered on July 19. (232) Their prince Tugorkan was killed, and many others of our enemies fell. On the morrow, they found the dead body of Tugorkan, and Svyatopolk, respecting him as his father-in-law even though he was a foe, brought him to Kiev and buried him at Berestovo, between the road to Berestovo and the road to the monastery.

On Friday, the twentieth of this same month, Bonyak, that godless, mangy thief and bandit, came suddenly to Kiev for the second time. The Polovcians almost entered the city, burned the suburbs about the town, and then attacked the monastery. After burning the monastery of Stephen and the villages of Germanus's monastery,³⁰⁴ they came to the Crypt Monastery while we were resting in our cells after matins, and they howled about the monastery. They planted two standards before the monastery gates, and we fled, some of us behind the building of the monastery, and others to its various rooms. The godless sons of Ishmael slew the brethren in the monastery and wandered about among the cells, breaking down the doors, and they carried off whatever they could find in the various rooms. Then they set fire to the shrine of the Holy Virgin. Upon arriving before the church, they thus set fire to the south (233) and the north doors, and upon making their way into the chapel near the grave of Theodosius, they seized the eikons, burned the doors, and blasphemed against God and our faith. But God suffered their iniquities because their sins and their transgressions were not completed. Thus they said, "Where is their God? Let him come and deliver them," and they made other blasphemous remarks about the holy eikons, which they mocked, because they did not know that God punishes his servants by means of barbarian incursions that they may appear as gold which has been tried in the furnace. The Christians, by virtue of their many sufferings and oppressions, shall enter the Kingdom of Heaven, but these pagans and blasphemers, who in this world enjoy happiness and increase, shall suffer torment at the hand of the devil, since they are destined to everlasting fire.

Then they burned the red palace which the pious Prince Vladimir had constructed upon the hill called Vŷdobŷchi and consumed the whole of it with fire. Wherefore let us imitate the prophet David, and exclaim, "Oh Lord my God, make them as a whirling dust, as a fire

before the face of the wind which consumeth the forests, so shalt thou pursue them with thy storm. Fill their countenances with shame" (*Ps.*, lxxxiii, 14-17). For they polluted and burned thy sacred dwelling, the monastery of thy Mother, and the relics of thy servants. The godless sons of Ishmael, (234) who had been sent as a chastisement to the Christians, even killed with the sword some of our brethren.

They came forth from the desert of Yathrib in the northeast. Four races of them issued forth: Torkmens, Pechenegs, Torks, and Polovcians. Methodius³⁰⁵ relates concerning them that eight nations fled when Gideon massacred them; eight fled into the desert, and four he massacred. Others say³⁰⁶ that they are the sons of Ammon, but this is not true, for the Caspians are the sons of Moab, while the Bulgars are the sons of Ammon. But the Saracens descended from Ishmael became known as the sons of Sarah, and called themselves *Sarakjyne*, that is to say, "We are descendants of Sarah." Likewise the Caspians and the Bulgars are descended from the daughters of Lot, who conceived by their father, so that their race is unclean. Ishmael begot twelve sons, from whom are descended the Torkmens, the Pechenegs, the Torks, and the Cumans or Polovcians, who came from the desert. After these eight races, at the end of the world, shall come forth the unclean peoples shut in the mountain by Alexander of Macedon.

I wish at this point to recount a story which I heard four years ago, and which was told to me by Gyuryata Rogovich of Novgorod: "I sent my servant," said he, "to the Pechera, a people who pay tribute (235) to Novgorod. When he arrived among them, he went on among the Yugra. The latter are an alien people dwelling in the north with the Samoyedes.³⁰⁷ The Yugra said to my servant, 'We have encountered a strange marvel, with which we had not until recently been acquainted. This occurrence took place three years ago. There are certain mountains which slope down to an arm of the sea, and their height reaches to the heavens. Within these mountains are heard great cries and the sound of voices; those within are cutting their way out. In that mountain, a small opening has been pierced through which they converse, but their language is unintelligible. They point, however, at iron objects, and make gestures as if to ask for them. If given a knife or an axe, they supply furs in return. The road to these mountains is impassable with precipices, snow, and forests. Hence we do not always reach them, and they are also far to the north.'"

Then I said to Gyuryata, "These are the peoples shut up by Alexander of Macedon. As Methodius of Patara says of them, 'He penetrated the eastern countries as far as the sea called the Land of the Sun,

and he saw there unclean peoples of the race of Japheth. When he beheld their uncleanness, he marvelled. They ate every nauseous thing, such as gnats, flies, cats, and serpents. They did not bury their dead, but ate them, along with the fruit of abortions (236) and all sorts of impure beasts. On beholding this, Alexander was afraid lest, as they multiplied, they might corrupt the earth. So he drove them to high mountains in the regions of the north, and by God's commandment, the mountains enclosed them round above save for a space of twelve ells. Gates of brass were erected there, and were covered with indestructible metal. They cannot be destroyed by fire, for it is the nature of this metal that fire cannot consume it, nor can iron take hold upon it. Hereafter, at the end of the world, eight peoples shall come forth from the desert of Yathrib, and these corrupt nations, which dwell in the northern mountains, shall also issue forth at God's command."⁸⁰⁸

But let us return to the topic we were discussing. When Oleg promised to join his brother David in Smolensk and to return to Kiev with him and there conclude a treaty of peace, he had no intention of keeping his promise, but as soon as he arrived at Smolensk, he gathered troops and went on to Murom, over which then ruled Izyaslav, the son of Vladimir.³⁰⁹ When it became known to Izyaslav that Oleg was approaching Murom, he straightway summoned troops from Suzdal', Rostov,³¹⁰ and Beloozero,³¹¹ and thus collected a large force. Oleg then sent envoys to Izyaslav with the message, "Return (237) to your own father's district in Rostov, for this is my father's territory here. I intend to abide here and settle my account with your father, for he expelled me from my father's city. Are you unwilling to let me eat my daily bread here?"³¹²

Izyaslav relied on the number of his troops and paid no attention to this warning. Oleg counted, however, on his rights (for he was justified in his contention), and marched toward the city with his troops. Izyaslav took up his position on the plain before the town. Oleg then approached him with his force; the two parties met, and a fierce battle ensued. Izyaslav, the son of Vladimir and the grandson of Vsevolod, was thus slain on September 6. His followers fled, some through the forest and others into the city. Oleg entered the town and was well received by the citizens. They took up Izyaslav's body, and after laying him first in the Monastery of the Redeemer, they carried him thence to Novgorod, where they buried him in St. Sophia on the left side.

After the capture of the city, Oleg arrested the men of Rostov, Beloozero, and Suzdal', fettered them, and then marched on Suzdal'.

When he arrived there, the inhabitants surrendered to him. Oleg, after pacifying the city, seized some inhabitants, and banished others, confiscating their property. He then went on to Rostov, and the inhabitants surrendered to him. He thus won the whole district of Murom and Rostov, appointed regents in each city, and began to exact tribute.

Mstislav then sent messengers to him from Novgorod and bade him depart from Suzdal' to Murom, instead of settling in another's domain. Mstislav also promised to intercede with Vladimir (238) in Oleg's behalf so as to effect a reconciliation between the two princes. He added that Oleg's killing of his brother Izyaslav was not a matter for surprise, since both kings and commons meet their end in battles. Oleg by no means desired such a reconciliation, but rather had in mind the seizure of Novgorod as well. He therefore sent forth his brother Yaroslav⁸¹⁸ as an outpost, and took up his position on the plain by Rostov.

After deliberation with the men of Novgorod, Mstislav despatched Dobrynya, son of Raguel, before him as a vanguard. Dobrynya first seized Oleg's tax-collectors. When Yaroslav, who was stationed on the Medveditsa⁸¹⁴ as outpost, heard how he had seized these tax-collectors, he fled by night, and when he returned to Oleg in his flight, he informed him that Mstislav was on his way and that the tax-collectors had been seized. Oleg departed straightway for Rostov, and when Mstislav arrived at the Volga, he was duly informed of Oleg's departure thither. Mstislav then pursued him. Oleg went on to Suzdal', and upon hearing that Mstislav was on his trail, he directed that the city should be burned. Only the structure of the Crypt Monastery survived, together with the Church of St. Demetrius, which Ephraim had donated together with certain villages.⁸¹⁵ Oleg escaped thence to Murom, Mstislav eventually arrived at Suzdal', and while he was making a halt there, he sent envoys to Oleg and asked for peace, saying, "I am your junior. Send to my father and return to him the followers whom you seized. I will then obey you in every respect." Oleg replied to him with a pretence of peaceful intent. Mstislav accepted his pretence as sincerity, and scattered his retainers among the villages.

Then came the week of St. Theodore (239) just before Lent. On the Saturday of this week, while Mstislav was at dinner, he received news that Oleg was on the Klyaz'ma,⁸¹⁶ for he had approached undetected. Mstislav had had confidence in his word and had set no watches. But God knows how to save his pious followers from treachery. Oleg thus halted at the Klyaz'ma, expecting that Mstislav would flee. On that day and the next, Mstislav's retainers rallied about him, comprising men from Novgorod, Rostov, and Beloozero. Mstislav

marshalled his troop and took his position before the city. Oleg did not advance against Mstislav nor did Mstislav advance against Oleg, and they stood over against each other for four days.

News then came to Mstislav that his father had despatched his brother Vyacheslav³¹⁷ with Polovcian support. Vyacheslav arrived on the Thursday after St. Theodore's week, and therefore during the first week of Lent. On Friday, Oleg marshalled his forces and approached the town, while Mstislav went out to meet him with men of Novgorod and Rostov. Mstislav entrusted Vladimir's standard to a Polovcian named Kunuy, and detailing some foot-soldiers to his command, posted him on the right wing. Kunuy took Vladimir's standard and led on his infantry. When Oleg beheld the standard, he was terrified, and fear beset him and his soldiery. They then joined battle against each other, Oleg against Mstislav and Yaroslav against Vyacheslav. Mstislav (240) crossed a burnt clearing with the men of Novgorod, and they clashed with the enemy at Kulachek.³¹⁸ The combat was violent, and Mstislav began to win the upper hand. When Oleg saw how the standard of Vladimir advanced, he began to fall back. He finally fled in terror, and Mstislav won the victory. Oleg escaped to Murom, and after fortifying Yaroslav there, he went on to Ryazan'.³¹⁰ Mstislav then arrived at Murom, made peace with the inhabitants, and after releasing his men from Rostov and Suzdal', pursued Oleg to Ryazan'.

Oleg escaped from that city, so that Mstislav on his arrival made peace with the inhabitants, and liberated those of his own subjects whom Oleg had thrown into prison. He then sent messages to Oleg, saying, "Flee no more, but rather approach your brethren with the request that they may not expel you from Rus'. I shall intervene with my father in your behalf." Oleg promised to act accordingly. Mstislav, upon returning again to Suzdal', departed thence to his own city of Novgorod, accompanied by the prayers of the reverend Bishop Nikita.³²⁰ These events occurred at the close of the year 6604 (1096), the fourth of the indiction.³²¹

(256) 6605 (1097). Svyatopolk, Vladimir, David son of Igor', Vasil'ko son of Rostislav, David son of Svyatoslav, and Oleg his brother met at Lyubech³²² to make peace, and said to one another, "Why do we ruin the land of Rus' by our continued strife against one another? The Polovcians harass our country in divers fashions, and rejoice that war is waged among us. Let us rather hereafter be united in spirit and watch over the land of Rus', and let each (257) of us guard his own domain; with Svyatopolk retaining Kiev, the heritage of Izyaslav, while Vladimir holds the domain of Vsevolod, and David,

Oleg, and Yaroslav between them possess that of Svyatoslav. Let the domains apportioned by Vsevolod stand, leaving the city of Vladimir in the hands of David, while the city Peremýshl' belongs to Volodar' son of Rostislav, and Vasil'ko son of Rostislav holds Terebovl."³²³ On this convention they took oath to the effect that, if any one of them should thereafter attack another, all the rest, with the aid of the Holy Cross, would be against the aggressor. Thus they all said, "May the Holy Cross and the entire land of Rus' be against him," and having taken oath, returned each to his domain. Accompanied by David, Svyatopolk arrived in Kiev, and all the people rejoiced. There was only the devil to be distressed by this display of affection.³²⁴

Satan now incited certain men to report to David son of Igor³²⁵ that Vladimir was conspiring with Vasil'ko against Svyatopolk and against himself. David gave credence to their false words, and endeavored to stir up Svyatopolk against Vasil'ko, saying, "Who killed your brother Yaropolk? Now he plots against me and against you, and has conspired with Vladimir. Take thought for your own head." Svyatopolk was thus perturbed, and wondered whether these allegations were true or false; he was uncertain, and replied to David, "If you speak aright, may God be your witness. But if you speak from motives of jealousy only God will punish you for it."

Svyatopolk was concerned for his brother and himself, and wondered whether the rumor were true. He finally believed David, who thus deceived Svyatopolk, and the two of them set out to plot (258) against Vasil'ko.³²⁶ Now Vasil'ko and Vladimir were ignorant of this fact. David remarked, however, that if he and Svyatopolk did not seize Vasil'ko, Svyatopolk would not be sure of Kiev, nor he himself of Vladimir [Volýnsk]. And Svyatopolk believed him.

Vasil'ko arrived on November 4, crossed over to Vydubichi, and went to make his reverence to St. Michael in the monastery, where he also supped. He pitched his camp on the Ruditsa. At evening, he returned to his camp. When it was morning, Svyatopolk urged him by messenger not to depart before his name-day. Vasil'ko refused, urging that he could not wait that long, or there would be disorder in his domain. Then David begged him not to depart, but rather to obey his elder cousin. Vasil'ko, however, was still reluctant to comply.

Then David remarked to Svyatopolk, "See, he sets no store by you, though he is in your power. If he departs to his domain, you shall see whether he does not seize your cities of Turov and Pinsk,³²⁷ and other towns which belong to you; then you will perhaps remember my words. Call the men of Kiev and take him prisoner; then deliver him

over to me." Svyatopolk followed his advice, and sent word to Vasil'ko, saying, "If you are unwilling to remain until my name-day, at least come and greet me now, and then we shall meet with David." Vasil'ko promised to go, and did not perceive the treachery which David was planning against him. Vasil'ko thus mounted his horse and rode off. One of his servants then met him and urged him not to go, because the princes were plotting to take him prisoner. But Vasil'ko heeded him not, as he thought (259) to himself, "How can they intend to take me prisoner? They have just sworn that if any one of us should attack another, the Holy Cross and all of us should be against him." Having thus reflected, he crossed himself, and said, "God's will be done."

He thus rode with a small escort to the Prince's palace. Svyatopolk came out to meet him, and they went into the hall. David entered, and all sat down. Then Svyatopolk begged Vasil'ko to remain until his name-day. Vasil'ko replied, "I cannot remain, cousin; I have already ordered my camp to move forward." David sat silent as if struck dumb, till Svyatopolk invited Vasil'ko to breakfast with them, and Vasil'ko accepted. Then Svyatopolk said, "Remain seated here a moment while I go out and make certain disposition." He thus went out, leaving David and Vasil'ko alone together. Vasil'ko tried to open a conversation with David, but there was no voice nor hearing in him, for he was afraid, and had treachery in his heart. After he had sat awhile, he inquired where his cousin was. The answer was given that he was standing in the vestibule. David then rose and asked Vasil'ko to remain seated while he sent in search of Svyatopolk. He thus stood up and went thence. When David had thus gone out, others seized upon Vasil'ko and fettered him with double fetters, setting guards over him by night. This treachery took place on November 5.

In the morning, Svyatopolk assembled the boyars and the men of Kiev and informed them of what David had told him, to the effect that Vasil'ko had been responsible for his brother's death, was plotting with Vladimir against him, and intended to kill him and seize his cities. The boyars and the populace replied, (260) "It behooves you, oh Prince, to protect your own life. If David spoke aright, let Vasil'ko suffer the penalty. If David has spoken falsely, let him suffer the vengeance of God and answer before God." When the priors heard of the circumstances, they interceded with Svyatopolk in Vasil'ko's behalf, but he protested that it was all David's affair.³²⁸ When David heard of all this, he urged that Vasil'ko should be blinded, on the ground that if Svyatopolk did nothing and released Vasil'ko, neither he himself nor

Svyatopolk would be able to retain their thrones much longer. Svyatopolk was in favor of releasing him, but David kept close watch over him and would not consent.

During the night, they thus took Vasil'ko to Belgorod, which is a small town ten versts from Kiev. They transported him fettered in a cart, and after removing him from the vehicle, they led him into a small house. As he sat there, Vasil'ko saw a Tork sharpening a knife, and then comprehending that they intended blinding him, he cried out to God with loud weeping and groaning. Then came the emissaries of Svyatopolk and David: Snovid, the son of Izech, the squire of Svyatopolk, and Dmitr, David's squire, and they laid a rug upon the floor. After they had spread it, they seized Vasil'ko and endeavored to overthrow him. He offered a violent resistance, so that they could not throw him. Then others came and cast him down. They bound him, and laid upon his chest a slab taken from the hearth. Though Snovid, the son of Izech, sat at one end and Dmitr at the other, they still could not hold him down. (261) Then two other men came, and after taking a second slab from the hearth, they too sat upon him, and weighed upon him so heavily that his chest cracked. Then a Tork, Berendi by name, a shepherd of Svyatopolk, came up with his knife and though intending to strike him in the eye, missed the eye entirely and cut his face. This scar Vasil'ko bears to this day. Afterward, however, he struck him in one eye, and took out the pupil, and then in the other eye, and also removed the pupil of the latter.

At that moment Vasil'ko lay as if dead. They raised him in the rug, laid him fainting in the wagon, and carried him off to Vladimir. While he was being thus transported, they happened to halt with him at a market place after they had crossed the bridge at the town of Zvizhden'.⁸²⁰ They took off his bloody shirt, and gave it to a priest's wife to wash. After she had washed it, the woman put it on him while the others were eating, and she began to weep, for he was as if dead. He heard her weeping, and inquired where he was. They replied that the town was Zvizhden'. He then begged for water. They gave him some, and after he had drunk the water, full consciousness returned to him. He remembered what had occurred, and feeling his shirt, he lamented, "Why did you take it from me? I had rather have met my death and stood before God in this bloody shirt."

When they had eaten, they rode on swiftly in the cart with him, and over a rough road, for it was then the month of Gruden, called November. They arrived with him at Vladimir (262) on the sixth day. David accompanied them, and behaved as if he had captured some

prize. They quartered Vasil'ko in the Vakeev palace, and placed over him a guard of thirty men, as well as two servants of the Prince named Ulan and Kolchko.

When Vladimir learned that Vasil'ko was captured and blinded, he was horror-struck, and bursting into tears declared, "Such a crime as this has never been perpetrated in Rus' in the time of either our grandfathers or our fathers." Then he immediately sent messages to David and Oleg,³³⁰ the sons of Svyatoslav, saying, "Come forthwith to Gorodets, that we may avenge this crime which has occurred in the land of Rus' among us kinsmen, and has cast a sword among us. If we do not avenge this deed, a greater crime will rise against us. Brother will begin to kill brother, so that the land of Rus' will perish, and our foes the Polovcians will come and take it."

When David and Oleg heard these words, they were deeply troubled and wept, saying, "Such a thing never before happened in our family." They straightway collected troops and joined Vladimir. While Vladimir and his troops remained in a forest, he and David and Oleg sent messengers to inquire of Svyatopolk, "What is this crime you have committed in the land of Rus', and thus have cast a sword among us? (263) Why have you blinded your cousin? If there was any charge against him, you should have accused him before us, and after properly convicting him you could then have treated him as he deserved. Now make plain this fault for which you so punished him."

Svyatopolk replied, "David, the son of Igor', said to me, 'Vasil'ko killed your brother Yaropolk, and likewise intends to kill you and seize your domain of Turov, Pinsk, Brest and the Pogorina.'³³¹ He has sworn an oath with Vladimir that Vladimir shall reign in Kiev and he himself in the city of Vladimir.' I had to take my precautions, but it was David and not I who blinded him and carried him home." Then the envoys of Vladimir, David, and Oleg made answer, "Do not seek to excuse yourself for this crime on the ground that David did the actual blinding. Vasil'ko was not seized and blinded in David's city, but in your own." When they had thus spoken, they departed.

On the morrow, when the princes intended crossing the Dnieper to attack Svyatopolk, the latter planned to escape from Kiev. The inhabitants would not permit his departure, but sent Vsevolod's widow³³² and the Metropolitan Nicholas³³³ to Vladimir with the plea, "We beseech you, oh Prince, and your brethren not to ruin the land of Rus'. For if you begin hostilities among yourselves, the pagans will rejoice and seize our country which was won by your sires and grandsires who, by waging war with great courage (264) throughout

the land of Rus' added other territories to it. But you are in a fair way to destroy the whole country." The widow of Vsevolod and the Metropolitan came into the presence of Vladimir and made known their plea, expressing the prayer of the people of Kiev that he would conclude a peace, guard the land of Rus', and keep up the good fight against the pagans.

When Vladimir heard their request, he broke into tears and exclaimed, "Verily our fathers and our grandsires took thought for this land which we are trying to destroy." He inclined to the prayer of the Princess, and honored her as his mother out of pious memory of his father. For he had been very dear to his father, and never disobeyed him in any respect either during his lifetime or after his decease. Thus he obeyed her as he was bound to obey his mother, and he respected the Metropolitan as well (for he revered ecclesiastical rank), and did not disregard his plea. Vladimir was indeed considerate. He loved the metropolitans, the bishops, and the priors; and still more the monastic orders and the monks. Those who came to him in need he provided with food and drink as a mother aids her children. If he saw anyone uproarious or committing some excess, he did not condemn him, but rebuked all persons affably. But let us return to our subject.

When the Princess had visited Vladimir, she returned to Kiev, and recounted all his words to Svyatopolk and the inhabitants, announcing that there would be peace. The princes then exchanged communications, and agreed to suggest to Svyatopolk (265) that if David was responsible for the crime, then Svyatopolk should march against him and either capture him or drive him into exile. Svyatopolk accepted this proposal, so that all joined in an oath and thus made peace once more.

While Vasil'ko was at Vladimir [Volynsk] in the aforementioned place, and Lent was approaching, and while I was myself there at Vladimir, Prince David sent for me during a certain evening, and I entered his presence. His retainers sat around him, and he offered me a seat. He then remarked, "Vasil'ko spoke this evening to Ulan and Kolchko saying, 'I hear that Vladimir and Svyatopolk are marching against David. If David would take my advice, he would send an envoy to Vladimir and beg him to turn back.' For I know what he thus discussed with them. For that reason, I choose you, Vasiliy,³⁸⁴ as my messenger. Go to your namesake Vasil'ko and bespeak him thus in my behalf: 'If you will send your messenger and Vladimir turns back then I will give you any city you desire, either Vsevolozh', Shepol',

or Peremil'." ³³⁵ I then went to Vasil'ko and reported to him all the words of David. He replied, "As a matter of fact, I did not utter these words. But I hope in God, and shall indeed send a messenger, that they may not shed blood for my sake. I am indeed surprised that he promises me his own city, but Terebovl' is mine, my own domain, now and forever." Thus it came about that he soon recovered his domain. He then said to me, "Go to David and tell him to send Kul'mey to me; I will despatch him to Vladimir."

David did not heed his request, (266) but instead sent back word through me that Kul'mey was not there. Then Vasil'ko said to me, "Sit with me a little while." He thus bade his servant leave us, and as we sat together he remarked, "I hear that David wishes to surrender me to the Poles. He is not even satisfied with my blood, and desires the further satisfaction of delivering me up to them, for I have done the Poles much harm, and would gladly have done them still more to avenge the land of Rus'. Yet even if he does surrender me to the Poles, I do not fear death. But this much I tell you: verily God has brought all this upon me for my pride, since, when the news came to me that the Berendiches, ³³⁶ the Pechenegs, and the Torks were approaching, I thought that, when they should all be subject to me, I might request my kinsmen Volodar' and David to lend me their younger retainers, while they themselves should drink and be happy. Then I hoped to invade Poland in winter and summer, subject the country of Poland, and thus avenge the land of Rus'. I also planned to overcome the Danube Bulgarians and subject them to my authority. After that, I intended to request Svyatopolk and Vladimir to allow me to attack the Polovcians, that I might either win fame or lay down my life for our country. There was no other thought in my heart against either Svyatopolk or David, and I swear by God and his judgment that I did not plan any evil in any respect against my kinsmen, and it is only for my pride that God has humbled and humiliated me."

(267) Thereafter, when Easter was come, David set out with the intention of seizing Vasil'ko's domains. Volodar', Vasil'ko's brother, met him at Buzh'sk. ³³⁷ David did not dare to withstand him, but barricaded himself in Buzh'sk, while Volodar' laid siege to him in the city. Then Volodar' demanded, "Why have you done evil and why do you not repent? Bear in mind what crimes you have committed." Then David endeavored to pass the blame upon Svyatopolk with the excuse, "Did I commit this crime, or was it perpetrated in my city? I was afraid that they might seize me and deal with me in the same way.

I had to participate in their counsels since I was in their power." Volodar' replied, "God is witness to that. But now release my brother, and I will make peace with you."

David rejoiced, and sent for Vasil'ko. He thus led him forth and turned him over to Volodar', and made peace, after which they parted. Vasil'ko settled at Terebovl', while David went to the city of Vladimir, and when spring was come, Volodar' and Vasil'ko marched to attack David. They arrived at Vsevolozh', while David fortified his position at Vladimir. After laying siege to Vsevolozh', the princes captured the city by storm and set fire to it. As the inhabitants fled before the flames, Vasil'ko commanded that they should all be slain. Thus he took revenge upon innocent people, and shed innocent blood.

They arrived soon thereafter at Vladimir, where David was fortified, and laid siege to the city. (268) They then sent messages to the inhabitants, declaring, "We have not come to attack your city, nor yourselves, but our hostility is directed against our enemies Turyak, Lazar', and Vasiliy, for they gave evil advice to David, and in accordance with their counsel he has committed this crime. If you wish to take up arms in their behalf, we are ready to fight. But you would be better advised to surrender our enemies." The citizens, upon the receipt of this message, called an assembly, and demanded of David that he should surrender the fugitives. They made it clear that while they were willing to fight for him, they would not take up arms for the fugitives, and threatened to open the city gates, leaving him to shift for himself. David was thus under the necessity of surrendering the fugitives. He pointed out, however, that they were not in the city, as he had sent them to Lutsk. After they had gone to Lutsk, Turyak fled to Kiev, while Lazar' and Vasiliy returned to Turiysk.³³⁸ When the inhabitants of Vladimir heard that they were in Turiysk, they cried out upon David, and demanded that he should yield up those men whom the princes desired of him, or else they would surrender the city. David then obeyed, and brought forth Lazar' and Vasiliy to deliver them up. On Sunday, peace was concluded, and at dawn on the following day Vasiliy and Lazar' were hanged. Vasil'ko's men shot at them with arrows, and then left the city. Thus Vasil'ko exacted a second revenge, which was not fair to do, since God was the avenger, and Vasil'ko should have entrusted his vengeance to God. For the prophet has said, "I will render vengeance to mine enemies, and will reward them that hate me" (*Deut*, xxxii, 41), even as he avenges and ever shall avenge the blood of his children, (269) and shall perform vengeance upon his enemies and them that hate him.

When the foemen had left the city, the inhabitants cut down the bodies and burned them. Since Svyatopolk had promised to expel David, he went to Brest for Polish aid. When David heard of his journey, he set out to visit Vladislav³³⁹ in Poland in search of assistance. The Poles promised to aid him, and upon the receipt of fifty *griunŷ* of gold, they proposed that he should go with them to Brest and surprise Svyatopolk while he slept, and thus effect a reconciliation between him and Svyatopolk. David followed their suggestion and accompanied Vladislav to Brest. Svyatopolk remained within the city, while the Poles stopped by the river Bug. Svyatopolk then made a compact with the Poles, and paid them large sums to turn against David. Vladislav thereupon informed David that Svyatopolk had not been amenable to his persuasion, and therefore recommended that he return home. David accordingly went back to Vladimir.

In accordance with his convention with the Poles, Svyatopolk moved on to Pinsk³⁴⁰ after he had summoned his troops. He arrived at Dorogobuzh³⁴¹ and there waited his soldiery. He then marched against David in Vladimir. David fortified himself within the city, and expected help from the Poles against Svyatopolk, for they had promised to be his allies if the Russian princes attacked him. But they were deceiving him, since they had received gold from both David and Svyatopolk. Svyatopolk laid siege to the city and remained before it seven weeks. Then David entreated him to let him depart from the city. Svyatopolk gave him his promise to this effect, and after they had exchanged pledges, David left the city and went to Cherven.

Svyatopolk entered the city on Holy Saturday, and David fled into Poland. After expelling David, Svyatopolk seriously considered an attack upon Volodar' and Vasil'ko, on the ground that this was the domain of his father and his brother, and therefore marched forth against them. (270) When Volodar' and Vasil'ko heard of this action, they proceeded to meet him, carrying with them the cross upon which he had sworn that he had come only to attack David, but was desirous of maintaining peaceful and friendly relations with them. Svyatopolk, notwithstanding, violated his oath, since he trusted in the number of his troops. The two parties met on the Rozhne plain,³⁴² where both forces were drawn up, and Vasil'ko lifted up the cross, crying, "Here is the cross upon which you swore. First you stole the sight of my eyes, and now you desire to take my life as well. May this cross be between us!" They thus advanced to battle, and as the armies met, many pious men beheld the Cross lifted high above Vasil'ko's forces. Since the conflict was violent and the casualties numerous on both sides,

Svyatopolk, upon noticing that the combat was fierce, took to flight, and escaped to the city of Vladimir. After their victory, Volodar' and Vasil'ko remained on the spot and made no move, since they considered it advisable to remain within their boundaries.

Svyatopolk thus made good his escape to Vladimir, accompanied by his two sons, the two sons of Yaropolk, Svyatosha son of David Svyatoslavich,³⁴⁸ and the rest of his retainers. Svyatopolk set up as prince in Vladimir Mstislav, who had been borne to him by a concubine, and then despatched Yaroslav among the Hungarians to incite them against Volodar', while he himself departed for Kiev. Yaroslav, the son of Svyatopolk, thus returned with Hungarian reinforcements, along with King Koloman³⁴⁴ and two bishops, and they besieged Peremyshl' on the Vyagro, while Volodar' fortified himself within the town.

At this time David, after returning from Poland, had left his wife with Volodar' and departed among the Polovcians. He was met by Bonyak, however, so David turned back, and the two of them attacked the Hungarians. While on their journey, they pitched a bivouac, and at midnight Bonyak arose and rode away from the troops. (271) He straightway began to howl like a wolf, till first one and then many wolves answered him with their howls. Bonyak then returned to camp and announced to David that on the morrow they would celebrate a victory over the Hungarians.

The next day Bonyak marshalled his troops; David had one hundred men and he himself three hundred. He divided them into three troops and attacked the Hungarians. He sent Altunopa as a vanguard with fifty men, stationed David under the standard, and split his own force into two parts with fifty in each section. The Hungarians were aligned in corps, for their number was one hundred thousand. Altunopa attacked the first corps, and after his troop had shot their arrows, they fled before the Hungarians, who gave chase. In their course, they passed in front of Bonyak, who wheeled and attacked them from the rear. Altunopa then faced about, and they did not allow the Hungarians to give ground, but thus killed a great number as they drove them back and forth. Bonyak divided his men into three sections and they drove the Hungarians hither and yon as a falcon drives magpies.

The Hungarians fled, and many were drowned, some in the Vyagro and others in the San. As they fled along the San toward the mountains, they jostled each other in their haste, and the enemy pursued them for two days as he cut them down. Their Bishop Kupan and many of their boyars there met their deaths, for it was commonly reported that forty thousand of them perished. Yaroslav³⁴⁵ escaped to

Poland and arrived safely at Brest, while David, after taking Suteysk and Cherven, came suddenly and attacked the people of Vladimir.

Mstislav shut himself up in the city with his garrison, for he had with him men of Brest, Pinsk, and Vÿgoshev.³⁴⁶ David persisted in his siege, and made frequent attacks. On one occasion, his troops advanced beneath the very towers of the city, while the inhabitants were fighting from the city wall, and as both sides shot at each other, (272) the arrows fell thick as rain. Just as Mstislav was drawing his bow, he was suddenly stricken under the arm-pit by an arrow which had come through a cranny in a board upon the wall. He was carried away, and died in the course of that same night. His retainers hid his body for three days, but on the fourth they reported his death to the assembly. The inhabitants then lamented, "Our prince is dead. If we surrender, then Svyatopolk will kill us all." They then sent a message to Svyatopolk, declaring, "Your son is slain and we ourselves are weak with hunger. If you do not relieve us, the people will surrender, since they cannot endure famine."

Svyatopolk then sent Putyata, his general, and Putyata marched with his followers to Lutsk to meet Svyatosha, the son of David [of Chernigov]. The latter had certain retainers of David [of Vladimir-Volÿnsk] there with him, for he had entered into a pact with David which entailed his promise to inform David if Svyatopolk should attack him. Svyatosha, however, did not keep his promise, but arrested David's retainers, and set out himself to attack David. Svyatosha and Putyata arrived at Vladimir on August 5, while David's forces were besieging the city. David was taking his noonday siesta, and they fell upon his army and cut it to pieces. The inhabitants thereupon sallied out from the city, and began a massacre of David's soldiery. Both David and Mstislav his nephew fled. Svyatosha and Putyata then took possession of the city, and appointed Vasiliy as Svyatopolk's regent. Svyatosha then returned to Lutsk and Putyata to Kiev.

David escaped to the Polovcians, among whom Bonyak received him. The two of them advanced to attack Svyatosha in Lutsk, but made peace after they had laid siege to him in his city. Svyatosha then left his city and journeyed to his father in Chernigov. David thereupon seized Lutsk, and then departed thence to the city of Vladimir. Vasiliy the Regent immediately took to flight, so that David (273) seized Vladimir and settled there as prince. In the following year, Svyatopolk, Vladimir, David, and Oleg won over to their cause David the son of Igor', but instead of assigning him the domain of Vladimir, they appointed him to Dorogobuzh, where he died. Thereupon Svyatopolk

took possession of Vladimir, and established there as prince his son Yaroslav.

6606 (1098). Vladimir, David, and Oleg marched forth against Svyatopolk and halted at Gorodets,³⁴⁷ where they made peace, as I mentioned in the account for the previous year.

6607 (1099). Svyatopolk advanced toward Vladimir [Volÿnsk] to attack David, and drove him into Poland. In this year, the Hungarians were defeated near Peremÿshl'. In this year, Mstislav, the son of Svyatopolk, was killed in Vladimir on July 12.

6608 (1100). On June 10, Mstislav³⁴⁸ departed from David³⁴⁹ to the seacoast. On August 10 of the same year, the cousins Svyatopolk, Vladimir and David, and Oleg concluded peace among themselves at Uvetichi.³⁵⁰ At the same place, on the thirtieth day of the same month, the cousins Svyatopolk, Vladimir, David, and Oleg all met together, and David, the son of Igor', came before them and said, "Why have you summoned me? Behold, I am here. Who is dissatisfied with me?" Vladimir then answered him, "You have sent us this message: 'I desire, my cousins, to come before you and complain of my wrongs.' You now have come before us, and are seated upon the same rug with your cousins. Why do you not accuse any one of us against whom you have cause for complaint?" But David answered nought. All the kinsmen then mounted (274) their horses. Svyatopolk stood there with his retainers, and David and Oleg with theirs, at some little distance apart, while David, the son of Igor', sat by himself. They refused him further access to their presence, but considered him privately by themselves. After some consultation, they sent their messengers to David: Svyatopolk despatched Putyata, Vladimir detailed Orogost' and Ratibor, and David and Oleg deputed Torchin. These emissaries came to David and reported, "This is the decision of your cousins in your regard: they do not wish to grant you the domain of Vladimir, for the reason that you cast a sword among them in a fashion hitherto unknown in the land of Rus'. They will not take you prisoner or offer you any harm, but they grant you the privilege of settling in the fortress of Buzh'sk. Svyatopolk bestows upon you Duben and Chertorÿysk, while Vladimir pays you two hundred *grivny*, and David and Oleg the same amount between them.³⁵¹ The princes then sent their deputies to Volodar' and Vasil'ko, with instructions that Volodar' should take Vasil'ko under his charge, and share with him the single domain of Peremÿshl'. They were to remain there together, but in case Vasil'ko was unfavorable to this arrangement, he was to rejoin the princes so that they might care for him. Volodar' was also instructed to return

their slaves and peasants. Neither Volodar' nor Vasil'ko heeded these instructions. Dávid, however, settled at Buzh'sk, and subsequently Svyatopolk gave him Dorogobuzh, where he died. The domain of Vladimir [Volýnsk] he assigned to his son Yaroslav.

6609 (1101). Vseslav, the prince of Polotsk, died on Wednesday, April 14, at the ninth hour of the day.³⁵² In the same year, (275) Yaroslav, the son of Yaropolk prepared war at Brest. Svyatopolk advanced to attack him, besieged him in his city, and after capturing him, shackled him and brought him to Kiev. The Metropolitan and the priors interceded in his behalf, persuaded Svyatopolk to pardon him, and then conducted him to the tomb of Sts. Boris and Gleb, where they removed his shackles and released him. In the same year, all the cousins met at the Zolor'cha:³⁵³ Svyatopolk, Vladimir, David, Oleg, and Yaroslav, the brother of the two last-mentioned.³⁵⁴ The Polovcians sent messages from all their princes to the cousins with propositions of peace. The Russian princes replied that if they desired peace, a parley might be held at Sakov.³⁵⁵ The Polovcians accepted the suggestion, and assembled at Sakov. Peace was there concluded with the Polovcians, and hostages were exchanged upon September 15, after which they parted company.

6610 (1102). Yaroslav, the son of Yaropolk, fled from Kiev on October 1. At the close of the same month, Yaroslav the son of Svyatopolk lured Yaroslav the son of Yaropolk into an ambush, captured him thus on the Nura,³⁵⁶ and brought him before his father Svyatopolk. They thus laid him in chains. On December 20 of the same year, Mstislav, the son of Vladimir, arrived at Kiev with a suite of Novgorodians, since Svyatopolk had made an agreement with Vladimir whereby Svyatopolk should take over Novgorod and appoint his own son as prince there, while Vladimir was to appoint his own son prince in the domain of Vladimir. Mstislav thus arrived at Kiev, and settled in a house. The men of the city of Vladimir then called to Svyatopolk's attention that Vladimir had sent forward his son, and that the Novgorodians had already arrived. They therefore urged that the latter should take Svyatopolk's son with them and return to Novgorod, (276) while Mstislav should depart for Vladimir. The men from Novgorod then spoke up and declared to Svyatopolk, "We were sent to you, oh Prince, with positive instructions that our city does not want either you or your son. If your son has two heads, you might send him. But the fact is that Vsevolod assigned us Mstislav as our prince. We brought him up as one of us while you left us in the lurch." Svyatopolk then had a long argument with them, but in the end, since they could not

agree, the Novgorodians took Mstislav and departed homeward.³⁵⁷

On January 29 of this year, there was a portent in the heavens visible for three days, resembling a fiery ray which proceeded from east, south, west, and north, and all night there was as much light as shines from the full moon. On February 5 of this year, there was a portent in the moon. On the seventh of the same month, there was a portent in the sun: it was surrounded by three rainbows, and there were other rainbows one above the other. At the sight of these portents, pious men with sighs and tears begged God that he should turn these portents to a good end. For some portents are of evil and others of favorable significance. During the following year, God inspired the princes of Rus' with a noble project, for they resolved to attack the Polovcians and invade their territory, and this project was actually realized. This event we shall describe under the coming year. In this same year, on August 11, Yaroslav, the son of Yaropolk, passed away. On November 16 of this same year, Sbyslava, the daughter of Svyatopolk, was taken to Poland to marry Boleslav.³⁵⁸

(277) 6611 (1103). God inspired a noble project in the hearts of the Russian princes Svyatopolk and Vladimir, and they met for consultation at Dolobsk.³⁵⁹ Svyatopolk with his retainers and Vladimir with his own took their seats in the same tent. The retainers of Svyatopolk began the discussion, and remarked that it was not advisable to open hostilities in the spring, since they would ruin the peasants and their fields. Vladimir then replied, "I am surprised, comrades, that you concern yourselves for the beast with which the peasant plows. Why do you not bear in mind that as soon as the peasant begins his plowing, the Polovcian will come, shoot him down with his bolt, seize his horse, ride on into his village, and carry off his wife, his children, and all his property? Are you concerned for the horse and not for the peasant himself?"

Svyatopolk's retainers could find no answer, and Svyatopolk himself arose, remarking that for his part he was ready to fight. Then Vladimir informed him that by so doing he would confer an inestimable benefit upon the land of Rus'. They then sent to Oleg and David and invited them to make a life-or-death stand against the Polovcians. David accepted, but Oleg opposed the campaign on the ground that he was unwell. Vladimir then embraced his cousin, and proceeded to Pereyasavl', whither he was followed by Svyatopolk, David son of Svyatoslav, David son of Vseslav, Mstislav grandson of Igor', Vyacheslav son of Yaropolk,³⁶⁰ and Yaropolk son of Vladimir. They advanced on horseback and by boat, arrived below the cataracts, and

halted by the rapids (278) at the island of Khortitsa. They then mounted their horses, and when the foot-soldiers had disembarked from the boats, they traveled across country for four days, and arrived at Suten'.³⁶¹

When the Polovcians learned that the Russes were on their way, they collected innumerable forces and began to deliberate. Urusoba proposed that the Polovcians should make peace with the Russes, since the latter would offer the nomads a violent combat in view of the fact that the Polovcians had done much scathe to Rus'. The younger chiefs replied to Urusoba that even if he was afraid of the Russes, they were not dismayed, for after conquering the Russes, they would invade their country and take their cities, and they wondered who would protect the Russes against them.

The princes of Rus' and all the soldiery offered their prayers to God and made their vows to God and to the Blessed Virgin; some promised presents of food, others alms to the poor, and others supplied for the monasteries. After they had prayed thus, the Polovcians advanced, and sent Altunopa in front as a vanguard, since he was celebrated among them for his courage. The Russian princes likewise sent forward their advance party. They thus surprised the vanguard of Altunopa, upon whom they fell, slaying him and his followers. Not one of them escaped, for the Russes slew them all. The nomad troops came on like the trees of the forest, and their mass was impenetrable. The Russes straightway advanced to meet them. Now God on high inspired an awful fear in the Polovcians, so that terror and trembling beset them at the sight of the Russian forces, and they wavered. Even their steeds possessed no more swiftness of foot. But our soldiery, both foot and horse, advanced joyously to the combat.

Upon beholding the effort (279) of the Russes against them, the Polovcians fled before the Russian troops without even waiting to meet them, and our men gave chase and cut them down. On April 4, God thus performed a great salvation and bestowed upon us a mighty victory over our foes. Upon this expedition twenty Polovcian princes were slain: Urusoba, Kchi, Arslanapa, Kitanopa, Kuman, Asup, Kurtek, Chenegrepa, Sur'bar', and many other princes. Beldyuz' was taken captive.

The cousins then rested, since they had overcome their foes. They brought Beldyuz' before Svyatopolk, and the Polovcian chief offered to pay gold and silver, horses and cattle as his ransom. Svyatopolk then sent him to Vladimir. When he stood before him, Vladimir inquired, "Have you noticed how your former oath has brought you to ruin?"

Though you often gave pledges, you continued to harass the land of Rus'. Why did you not admonish your sons and your kinsmen not to violate their oaths by the shedding of Christian blood? Your blood be upon your own head." He then directed that the Polovcian should be killed, and they cut him to pieces.

Thereafter all the kinsmen gathered together, and Vladimir exclaimed, "This is the day that the Lord hath made, let us rejoice and be glad in it. For the Lord hath freed us from our foes, and put down our enemies, and crushed the serpents' heads. He hath given them as food to the men of Rus'." They thus seized sheep and cattle, horses and camels, tents with booty and slaves, and with the tents they captured Pechenegs and Torks. They then returned to Rus' carrying great spoil, with glory and a great victory won.

In this year, the locusts appeared on August 1. (280) On the eighteenth of the same month, Svyatopolk went forth and restored the town of Yur'ev,³⁶² which the Polovcians had burned. On March 4 of this year, Yaroslav³⁶³ fought with the Mordva, and was overcome.³⁶⁴

6612 (1104). The daughter of Volodar' was taken to Tsar'grad on July 20 to become the wife of the son of the Emperor Alexius.³⁶⁵ On August 21, of the same year Predslava, the daughter of Svyatopolk, was taken to Hungary to marry the king's son.³⁶⁶

In the same year, on December 6, the Metropolitan Nicephorus arrived in Russia. On the thirteenth of the same month, Vyacheslav, the son of Yaropolk, passed away.³⁶⁷ On the eighteenth of this month, the Metropolitan was elevated to the throne.

We should also mention that at the close of this year Svyatopolk despatched Putyata to attack Minsk, while Vladimir sent his son Yaropolk on this same mission. Oleg, accompanied by David, the son of Vseslav, made an attack upon Gleb. They achieved no success, and returned home again.³⁶⁸

A son was-born to Svyatopolk, and he named him Bryachislav.

In this year, a portent appeared. The sun stood in a circle; in the middle of the circle, a cross appeared, and the sun stood in the middle of the cross. Within the circle, on both sides, were seen two other suns, and outside the circle, above the sun, there appeared a rainbow with its horns to the northward. There was likewise a portent of the same aspect in the moon on February 4, 5, and 6, so that this portent was visible three days in the sun by day and three nights in the moon by night.

6613 (1105). The Metropolitan appointed Amphilochius as Bishop

of Vladimir on August (281) 27. On November 12 of the same year, he appointed Lazarus in Pereyasavl'. On December 13 of this year, he appointed Menas in Polotsk.

6614 (1106). The Polovcians raided in the vicinity of Zarechesk,³⁶⁹ and Svyatopolk sent Yan son of Vŷshata, his brother Putyata, and Ivan the Khazar, son of Zakhariy, to pursue them. They drove off the Polovcians and took some spoil. In the same year, Yan, that righteous ancient, died at a fair old age after a life of ninety years. Living as he did in the law of God, he was by no means inferior to the early saints. I heard from him many stories which I have set down in this chronicle as I heard them from his lips. His tomb is found in the chapel of the Crypt Monastery, where his body lies since its interment on June 24.

On December 6 of this year, Eupraxia, the daughter of Vsevolod, took the veil. In the same year, Zbygniew³⁷⁰ took refuge with Svyatopolk. On February 17 of this year, Svyatopolk, the son of David and grandson of Svyatoslav, became a monk.³⁷¹ In this same year, the Zimegola defeated all the sons of Vseslav, and slew nine thousand of their followers.³⁷²

6615 (1107), first year of the indiction, the fourth year of the lunar cycle and the eighth of the solar cycle. On May 7 of this year, the wife of Vladimir passed away.³⁷³ In the same month, Bonyak raided and seized many horses in the vicinity of Pereyasavl'. In the same year, Bonyak and old Sharukan and many other princes came (282) and laid siege to Lubnŷ.³⁷⁴ Svyatopolk, Vladimir, Oleg, Svyatoslav, Mstislav, Vyacheslav, and Yaropolk³⁷⁵ marched out to attack them at this town. At the sixth hour of the day, they crossed the Sula³⁷⁶ and shouted at the foe. The Polovcians were terrified, and because of their fear could not even raise a standard, but seized their horses and fled, while their foot-soldiers took to flight also. Our men then began to cut them down as they pursued them, and took others captive. They drove them thus nearly to the Khorol.³⁷⁷ They thus slew Taz, Bonyak's brother, while Sharukan barely escaped. On August 12, the Polovcians abandoned their camp, after the capture of which the Russian soldiery returned home with a great victory. Svyatopolk arrived before the Crypt Monastery at matins on the feast of the Assumption of the Blessed Virgin [August 15] and the brethren embraced him amid great rejoicing, because our enemies were overthrown through the prayers of the Holy Virgin and of our holy father Theodosius. For Svyatopolk,³⁷⁸ before he went forth to war or on some other mission, made it a habit to kneel beside the tomb of Theodosius, and after receiving

the blessing of the prior who was present, he proceeded with his errand.

On January 4 of this year, the Princess, Svyatopolk's mother, passed away.

During the same month of this year, Vladimir, David, and Oleg went forth to meet Aepa and his namesake and made peace. On January 12, Vladimir took (283) the daughter of Aepa son of Osen', to be the wife of Prince George, while Oleg took for his son the daughter of Aepa son of Girgen.³⁷⁹

6616 (1108). Upon July 11, the Church of St. Michael with the golden tower was founded by Prince Svyatopolk.³⁸⁰ The refectory of the Crypt Monastery was completed under the Prior Theoctistus.³⁸¹ It had been constructed at the order of Gleb³⁸² who bore the expense of it. In this year, there was high water on the Dnieper, the Desna, and the Pripet'.

In this year, God brought inspiration to Theoctistus, the prior of the Crypt Monastery, and he proposed to Prince Svyatopolk that Theodosius might be inscribed in the synodikon. The prince welcomed the suggestion and promised to execute it. He directed the Metropolitan to inscribe Theodosius in the synodikon, and gave orders to all bishops that he should be thus inscribed.³⁸³ They complied with pleasure, and promised to make mention of Theodosius at all the councils.

On July 25 of this year, Catherine, the daughter of Vsevolod, passed away.

In this year was completed the tower of the Church of the Holy Virgin in Klov, which had been founded by Stephen, former prior of the Crypt Monastery.³⁸⁴

6617 (1109). Eupraxia, the daughter of Vsevolod, died on July 10 and was laid in the Crypt Monastery by the southern portal. A chapel was built over her in which her body lies.³⁸⁵

On December 2 of this same year, (284) Dmitr, the son of Ivor, captured the Polovcian camp beside the Don.

6618 (1110). In the spring, Svyatopolk, Vladimir, and David marched forth to attack the Polovcians, but returned after reaching Voin'.³⁸⁶

On February 11 of this year, there was a portent in the Crypt Monastery. A fiery pillar appeared which reached from earth to heaven; lightnings illumined the whole countryside, and thunder was heard in the sky at the first hour of the night. The whole populace beheld the miracle. The pillar first stood over the stone refectory, so that its cross could not be seen. Then it moved a little, reached the church, and

halted over the tomb of Theodosius. Then it rose, as if facing to the eastward, and forthwith became invisible.

This portent was not an actual pillar of fire, but an angelic manifestation. For an angel thus appears either as a pillar of fire or as a flame, even as David has said, "He maketh the winds his messengers and his ministers a flaming fire" (*Ps. civ, 4*). They are sent forth by the command of God, according to the desire of the Lord and Creator of all things. For an angel appears wherever there are blessed abodes and houses of prayer, and they there exhibit such portion of their aspect as it is possible for men to look upon. It is, indeed, impossible for men to behold an angelic form, even as the mighty Moses could not view the angelic being, for a pillar of cloud led the children of Israel by day, and a pillar of fire by night. This (285) apparition indicated an event which was destined to take place, and its presage was later realized. For in the following year, was not an angel the guide of our princes against our pagan foes, even as it is written, "An angel shall go before thee" (*Ex. xxiii, 23*), and again, "Thy angel be with thee?"³⁸⁷

In the hope of God's grace, I Sylvester, Prior of St. Michaels, wrote this Chronicle in the year 6624 (1116), the ninth of the indiction, during the reign of Prince Vladimir in Kiev, while I was presiding over St. Michael's Monastery. May whosoever reads this book remember me in his prayers.³⁸⁸